

IAAP

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

EDITION 5.2
2026

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
Goetheanum
Medical Section
4143 Dornach
Switzerland

www.iaap-pharma.org
email: info@iaap-pharma.org

Introductory Note APC edition 5.2, 2026

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacy, IAAP

The IAAP is the international umbrella organization of the national associations of Anthroposophic Pharmacy.

Its purpose, objective and tasks are, in detail:

- To represent anthroposophic pharmacy in the anthroposophic-medical movement and in public life on an international level: Anthroposophic pharmacy is understood as an extension of conventional pharmacy.
- To set quality standards primarily for such manufacturing methods and substances which are used for anthroposophic medicinal products, but are not described in official pharmacopeias.
- To provide references for the anthroposophic use of the substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy.
- To promote research in anthroposophic pharmacy.
- To establish standards regarding further education and training as well as practice in anthroposophic pharmacy, including but not limited to retail pharmacy.
- To achieve international recognition by specialized publications and training material for anthroposophic pharmacists.
- To certify national training programmes in anthroposophic enlarged pharmacy.
- To certify individuals as anthroposophic pharmacists.
- To establish a cooperative network between anthroposophic pharmacists and people working in the field of anthroposophic medicinal products for the exchange of information and best practice throughout the world.
- To award the quality label "Anthromed® Pharmacy" to pharmacies which have competence in advice and manufacture of anthroposophic medicines.
- To initiate / coordinate international activities related to Anthroposophic pharmacy.

It is in fulfilment of these tasks, and in particular with regard to the setting and maintenance of quality standards, that the Board is pleased to publish edition 5.2 of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC).

Edition 5.2 contains a number of substantial amendments and further developments. The present edition further develops the structural and methodological framework introduced in the previous edition and incorporates a number of additions, revisions, and clarifications. In particular, several manufacturing methods have been revised or newly incorporated, and the glossary has been expanded. In Part IIB, the monograph on Cydonia has been revised and aligned in structure with the monograph on Viscum album. The structure of Part IIC has been prepared for the future inclusion of further dosage forms.

In addition, the appendices on starting materials and stocks have been revised and supplemented accordingly.

All substantial amendments to the previous edition are marked by a line in the margin beside the text. The APC is reviewed and updated by an anthroposophic pharmaceutical committee reporting to the IAAP Board.

The changes in summary:

NEW TEXTS

List of Abbreviations and Symbols
Ø / mother tincture

Glossary
Dilution, Extracts of herbal drugs, Mother tincture, Potentisation, Tinctures, and Triturations

Part IIA / Methods of anthroposophical preparations
APC 3.7.2 Aqueous mother tinctures with heat treatment and fermentation WLA
APC 3.7.3 Aqueous mother tinctures with fermentation LA
APC 3.7.4 Aqueous mother tinctures with heat treatment and fermentation WA
APC 3.7.5 Fermented aqueous mother tinctures L

3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment
Equisetum arvense, glycerol. decoctum (DER 1:2)

Appendix 2.2
List of starting materials of botanical origin
New starting material for fermented aqueous mother tinctures L included
Equisetum arvense, fresh, fertile shoots
Equisetum arvense, fresh, green, sterile shoots

Appendix 2.7
Stocks with special manufacturing methods
Quercus cortex sicc., ethanol. stab. decoctum 1:2
Aesculus hippocastanum cortex sicc., ethanol. stab. decoctum 1:2
Solanum dulcamara flos rec., glycerol stab. decoctum 1:2
Lysimachia nummularia Herba rec., glycerol. stab. decoctum 1:2

REVISED TEXTS
Glossary
Definition for vehicles updated

Part II Monographs

Part IIA / Methods of anthroposophical preparations

3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)
3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment
Transfer of mother tinctures extracted with glycerol 85% at 100°C from method 3.10 to method 3.11

Part IIB / Starting materials and preparations
Cydonia monograph revised and aligned with the structure of Viscum album
Structural preparation for further development of the chapter on dosage forms

Part IIC / Dosage forms
New numbering

Appendix 2.2
List of starting materials of botanical origin
Specification regarding Solanum dulcamara and Lysimachia nummularia in column "Ref Kom C"
Urtica dioica, whole, fresh, flowering plants

Appendix 2.6
List of compositions
Revision concerning starting materials in order to improve consistency of presentation
Kalium sulfuricum comp. use of the pharmacopoeial designation Lini semen in place of "linseed"

Index
Updated and revised for Edition 5.2

Members of the APC committee

Melanie Kaltenbach, food chemist, Switzerland, chairperson of the APC Committee, member of the European Pharmacopoeia HOM Working Party on Homoeopathic Raw Materials and Stocks, member of the Swissmedic committee for complementary medicines (Fachausschuss Komplementärmedizinische Arzneimittel), Drug Regulatory Affairs, Weleda AG.

Peter Pedersen, pharmacist, Denmark, former member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (Ausschuss Herstellungsregeln der Deutschen Homöopathischen Arzneibuch-Kommission).

Claude Rohner, biologist, Switzerland, Drug Regulatory Affairs, Weleda AG.

Thorsten Schletterer, pharmacist, Germany, member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (Ausschuss Herstellungsregeln der Deutschen Homöopathischen Arzneibuch-Kommission), member of the executive board of the Society for Anthroposophic Pharmacy in Germany (GAPiD e.V.), Senior expert for pharmaceutical processes, WALA Heilmittel GmbH.

René Schwarz, biology technician, Switzerland, therapist, former head of production, Weleda AG.

Jan Ziolkowski, pharmacist, Germany, Qualified Person, Weleda AG.

Responsible person of the IAAP:

Mónica Mennet-von Eiff, pharmacist, Switzerland, President of the IAAP, Board member of the Swiss association VAEPS, Board member of the Umbrella Association of Swiss pharmacists specialized in complementary medicine and phytotherapy (FG KMPhyto), Co-President of the Swiss Association for Complementary Medicinal Products (SVKH), Chief Pharma Officer, Weleda AG.

The APC is recognised by the following national anthroposophic pharmaceutical associations as members of the IAAP:

the ***Brazilian*** Association Farmantropo (Associação Brasileira de Farmácia Antroposófica – Brazilian Anthroposophic Pharmacy Association);
the ***German*** Association GAPiD (Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Pharmazie in Deutschland – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacy in Germany);
the ***Austrian*** Association ÖGAPh (Österreichische Gesellschaft anthroposophischer Pharmazeuten – Austrian Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);
the ***Italian*** Association SOFAI (Società di farmacisti antroposofi in Italia – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Italy);
the pharmacist section of the ***Swiss*** Association VAEPS (Verband für Anthroposophisch Erweiterte Pharmazie in der Schweiz – Association for Anthroposophically Extended Pharmacy in Switzerland);
The ***Japanese*** Association AAPJ (Japanese Association of anthroposophic oriented pharmacists).

Dr. Mónica Mennet-von Eiff, president IAAP, and responsible person for the APC 15.08.2026

Foreword

Pharmacy extended by the principles of anthroposophy began to be developed at the beginning of the 20th century by Rudolf Steiner (founder of anthroposophy, 1861 – 1925) and Oskar Schmiedel (Austrian chemist, 1887 – 1959), in collaboration with a number of physicians. Their aim was to reinterpret and complement the results of pharmaceutical and medical research with insights gained from anthroposophic research of the human being and nature.
The basis of the anthroposophic approach to pharmacy is the "holistic" knowledge of mankind and nature, which recognizes the notion that human beings and the kingdoms of nature are related through a common evolution[1].
This perception leads to a comprehensive view of substances in their relationship to health, illness and to a specific approach to pharmacy.

Therefore, anthroposophic pharmacy uses substances from the mineral, plant and animal kingdoms[2,3].

Anthroposophic medicinal products have been on the market worldwide and prescribed by qualified medical practitioners since 1921.

The range of anthroposophic medicinal products is partially determined by the physical characteristics of substances, whereby pharmacological, phytotherapeutic and homoeopathic criteria are taken into consideration. Most particularly, anthroposophic medicinal products are characterised by their manufacturing processes involving specific anthroposophic and typical homoeopathic pharmaceutical procedures. The range of anthroposophic medicinal products includes potentised medicinal products, manufactured using the methods of the official homoeopathic pharmacopoeias, as well as concentrated mineral, herbal or animal substances or preparations and compounded medicinal products. Considering this diversity, anthroposophic medicinal products, cannot be defined under a single substance classification.

This variety of starting substances and manufacturing methods as well as their combination in anthroposophical compositions makes a specific pharmacopoeia especially for anthroposophical pharmacy worthwhile.

Objective and purpose of the APC

The Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex is published by the IAAP, an independent association of professional pharmacists, within the context of existing official pharmacopoeias. The IAAP understands its task to sustain anthroposophic pharmaceutical activities at any level (e.g. by developing standards for raw materials, manufacturing, quality control, as well as regulatory affairs), worldwide, that is, beyond the countries of the European Pharmacopoeia Convention. Therefore, during the evolution of the APC other official pharmacopoeias (or reliable non-official pharmacopoeias) will possibly be referred to, e.g. the Brazilian Pharmacopoeia.

The publication of the APC is to provide transparency regarding anthroposphic pharmaceutical quality for authorities, pharmacists and bodies requiring an appreciation of anthroposophic medicinal products and pharmacy. Furthermore, it provides a basis for the maintenance of existing and development of new anthroposophic medicinal products.

The APC is continually being developed further, regarding manufacturing methods as well as substances It therefore also makes a contribution to further training as a publication that can be used worldwide.

The relationship of the APC to the European Pharmacopoeia, to other existing official pharmacopoeias and non-official pharmacopoeias

It is the intention of the APC to refer, where possible, to existing official pharmacopoeias. In fact, anthroposophic medicinal products are often manufactured and controlled according to existing specifications and standards.

Most of the reference pharmacopoeias for the APC are published by official authorities, in particular

the European Pharmacopoeia
the French Pharmacopoeia
and the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia
(which is a part of the German Pharmacopoeia).

The Swiss Pharmacopoeia has implemented two texts concerning anthroposophic pharmacy.

[1] Jos Verhulst: „Der Erstgeborene" (The first-born), publisher Verlag Freies Geistesleben, Stuttgart, D 2001.
[2] Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: „Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.
In English: „Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press , London, GB, 1996.
[3] Rudolf Steiner: „Geisteswissenschaft und Medizin", 20 Vorträge für Ärzte (1920), Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH 1985.
In English: „Introducing Anthroposophical Medicine" (previously published as: Spiritual Science and Medicine). Twenty lectures to doctors. Dornach 21 March – 9 April 1920, GA 312. Anthroposophic Press, Hudson, NY, USA, 1999.

- In 2009 (Suppl. 10.1) with the general Ph.Helv. monograph "Praeparationes anthroposophicae (Anthroposophic Preparations)" (Ph.Helv. CH 306); it was the first time that anthroposophic preparations appeared as a monograph in an official pharmacopoeia. This monograph includes the paragraphs definitions, starting materials, methods of preparation, and dosage forms.
- In 2013 (Suppl. 11.1) the new Ph.Helv. chapter "17.7 Manufacturing methods for anthroposophic preparations" came into force. This chapter gives an overview on the general manufacturing processes and describes in more detail some manufacturing methods which are more frequently used in anthroposophic pharmacy and had not been described in an official pharmacopoeia before.

The APC served as an important basis for establishing both of these Ph.Helv. texts. Therefore, it can be concluded, that the continuing work of the APC supports the establishment of pharmaceutical quality standards and the regulation of anthroposophic medicinal products in Switzerland.

Further pharmacopoeias of reference:
Brazilian Pharmacopoeia (Farmacopoeia Brasileira)
Brazilian Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia
The Homœopathic Pharmacopœia of the United States
Deutscher Arzneimittel-Codex (German Codex of Medicinal Products)

In particular the European Pharmacopoeia today represents and will continue to represent in the future a reference of paramount importance for the APC.

Therefore, in Part III of the APC, containing the lists of the various substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy reference is made where possible to the European Pharmacopoeia and other official pharmacopoeias.

Of particular importance is chapter 13 "Homoeopathy" of the European Pharmacopoeia containing monographs describing starting materials and preparations used also for anthroposophic medicines as well as general monographs on specific quality and safety aspects of starting materials used in anthroposophic preparations. Other pharmacopoeias referred to in the APC are not officially recognised. Nevertheless, they provide reliable standards accepted e.g. by regulatory authorities.

Legal Situation

Today the European Union Directive 2001/83/EC and amendments contain the main legislation concerning medicinal products. The legal status of anthroposophic medicinal products in the EU is closely related to that of homoeopathic medicinal products (see below).

Preamble of Directive 2001/83/EC n° (22) refers to anthroposophic medicinal products as follows:
"The anthroposophic medicinal products described in an official pharmacopoeia and prepared by a homeopathic method are to be treated, as regards registration and marketing authorization, in the same way as homeopathic medicinal products."

From a regulatory point of view anthroposophic medicinal products can be divided into two categories:

- anthroposophic medicinal products manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing method within the meaning of Directive 2001/83/EC, Article 1 (5):
  "Any medicinal product prepared from products, substances or compositions called homeopathic stocks in accordance with a homeopathic manufacturing procedure described by the European Pharmacopoeia or, in absence thereof, by the pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the Member States."
- anthroposophic medicinal products other than those manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing method. They are manufactured according to individual methods. Many of them have never been included in a pharmacopoeia, others are described since 2013 in the Swiss Pharmacopoeia.

The definitions of anthroposophic medicinal products given in the Swiss and German drug laws take both categories into account (translations by the APC Committee):

Switzerland: Ordinance of Swissmedic on the Simplified Licensing of Complementary and Phytotherapeutic Products (Verordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln)
Art. 4,3 g Anthroposophic medicinal product:
Medicinal product, whose active substances are manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure, or according to an anthroposophic manufacturing procedure described in the Pharmacopoeia (Ph.Eur./Ph.Helv.) or in the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is formulated and developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man, animal, substance and nature and is intended to be used according to these principles.

Germany: Medicinal Products Act (Gesetz über den Verkehr mit Arzneimitteln)
Art. 4, (33) An anthroposophic medicinal product is a medicinal product that has been developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man and nature and that is manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in absence thereof in a pharmacopoeia officially used in the Member States or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is meant to be used according to the anthroposophic principles concerning man and nature.

In many EU countries, and also world-wide, medicinal products used for the anthroposophic therapeutics are thus partially integrated in legislation.

In Brazil as well as in Australia the APC has been officially recognised as quality standard and reference for anthroposophic medicinal products (RESOLUÇÃO - RDC Nº 238, DE 25 DE JULHO DE 2018; Australian Therapeutic Goods Act, 2023, Chapter 3, Part 3-1 No. 10 Determination of standards).

In summary anthroposophic medicinal products as a whole are step by step gaining legal recognition in the EU as well as world-wide, and among other things this requires comprehensive publication of their pharmaceutical quality.

Table of Content

Introductory Note APC edition 5.2, 2026 2
Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC 11
List of Abbreviations and Symbols 12
Glossary 13

PART IA Definitions 15
1. Anthroposophic medicinal product 16
2. Starting materials, general information 16
2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters 17
2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin 17
2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin 17
2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically 18
2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods) 18
2.6. Compositions 18
3. Vehicles and excipients 18
4. Active substances 18
4.1. Starting materials 18
4.2. Preparations 18

PART IB Reagents 20
1. Reference standards 21
Chlorosulfonic acid R *(APC)* *21*
Eleutheroside B R *(APC)* *21*
Ribonuclease A R *(APC)* *21*

PART II Monographs 23

PART IIA Methods for anthroposophic preparations 24
Introduction 26
SURVEY OF GENERAL METHODS 28
CORRELATION TABLE OF GENERAL METHODS 30
CORRELATION TABLE Ph.Eur./HAB to HPUS 32
1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS 35
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods (“vegetabilised metals“) 35
2. METAL PREPARATIONS 36
2.1. Metal mirrors 36
3. TINCTURES, MOTHER TINCTURES, GLYCEROL MACERATES AND VISCOUS EXTRACTS 37
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof 37
3.2. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water 38
3.3. Glycerol macerates 39
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil 41
3.5. Mother tinctures made by percolation 41
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence / *deleted* *42*
3.7. Fermented mother tinctures 42
3.8. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion (Digestio) 47
3.9. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion (Infusum) 48
3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction) 50
3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment 51
3.12. Preparations made by distillation (Distillates) 51
3.13. Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold 52

4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT 54
4.1. Toasted preparations – Tosta 54
4.2. Carbons – Carbones 54
4.3. Ashes – Cineres 55
5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE) 55
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants 55
5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or liquid extracts 56
6. LIQUID DILUTIONS 57
7. COMPOSITIONS 57
7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes 57
7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures of one plant by one or more pharmaceutical processes 58
7.3. Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together 60
7.4. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes 60
7.5. Compositions made by co-potentising 60
7.6. Compositions including the dosage form and its excipients 61
8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS 61
8.1. Co-potentised preparations 61
8.2. Semi-solid potencies 62
8.3. Solid potencies 63
8.4. Liquid potencies 63
9. MIXTURES 64

PART IIB Starting materials and preparations 66

CYDONIA, FRUIT 67
CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, HEAT TREATED AQUEOUS TINCTURE 1:2.1 67
CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, GLYCEROL EXTRACT WITH HEAT TREATMENT 1:2.1 68
CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, MOTHER TINCTURE OBTAINED BY RHYTHMIC APPLICATION OF HEAT AND COLD CYDONIA OBLONGA E FRUCTIBUS FERM 33B 69
LEVICO WATER 70
VISCUM ALBUM 72
MOTHER TINCTURES AND EXTRACTS 76
VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH ONE-YEAR SHOOTS, BUFFERED AQUEOUS EXTRACT, 1:50 76
VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:20 78
VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, FERMENTED AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:5 80
VISCUM ALBUM L., WHOLE DRIED PLANTS, COLD-TREATED AQUEOUS MOTHER TINCTURE K 82

PART IIC Dosage forms 84

1. ANTHROPOSOPHICAL-PHARMACEUTICAL BASES FOR SEMI-SOLID PREPARATIONS 87
1.1. Water-emulsifying ointments 87
1.2. Hydrophobic ointments 88
1.3. Gels 89

PART III Appendices 92
Note concerning appendix 2.3. 93
References concerning nomenclature in appendices 2.1. to 2.7. 93
Note concerning the references for use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7. 93
IVAA Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin 95
APPENDIX 2.1 99
List of minerals, rocks and natural waters 99
APPENDIX 2.2 109
List of starting materials of botanical origin 109
APPENDIX 2.3 169
List of starting materials of zoological origin 169
APPENDIX 2.4 199
Starting materials that can be described chemically 199
APPENDIX 2.5 217
Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods) 217
APPENDIX 2.6 221
List of compositions 221
APPENDIX 2.7 241
Stocks with special manufacturing methods 241
Index list of terms of part I and II 246

Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC

Part IA "Definitions" provides definitions and describes quality aspects as well as parameters related to anthroposophic medicinal products. The different stages incurred in the obtaining of a medicinal product, from the starting material to the dosage form, are described in this part.

Part IB „Reagents" gives information on reagents, not described in other pharmacopoeias.

PART II contains monographs on manufacturing methods, starting materials. preparations and dosage forms

Part IIA"Methods for anthroposophic preparations" contains general monographs concerning the types of preparations/active substances that are prepared by specified procedures. Beneath the relevant general monograph(s), different specific production methods by which a particular type of a starting material can be prepared are either quoted from other pharmacopoeias or an APC production method is set out.

In this way, the relationship between the APC and other pharmacopoeias, as well as the option to define substances through their production methods are outlined.

Schematically the following order is applied:

General monographs

Definition, Identification, Tests, Assay, Storage, Recommended Designation

Specific production methods related to the particular general monograph

Ph.Eur. Methods	*HAB Methods*	*Ph.fr. Methods*	*APC Methods*

In part IIA a link to the HPUS is given:
Correlation table: Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposphic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS.

Part IIB "Starting materials and preparations" sets standards for specific starting materials and preparations. In their last section the monographs of the starting materials list
a) Some existing anthroposophic preparations that utilise the starting material and/ or
b) Manufacturing methods, described in the Ph.Eur., the HAB or the APC commonly used for the processing of the particular starting material. That list is not meant to be exhaustive.

Part IIC "Dosage forms". Information about dosage forms in anthroposophic pharmacy as well as production methods of specific dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products.

Part III "Appendices"

In the **appendices 2.1-5** starting materials for the preparation of anthroposophic medicinal products are listed (not excipients and vehicles). The appendices 2.6 and 2.7 describe the preparation of compositions and other preparations. The appendices are numbered according to the related chapter in part IA: 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5., 2.6.

List of Abbreviations and Symbols

*	see p. 85
1 CH	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also C1 and 1C
1 DH	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also D1 and 1X
1C	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and C1
1X	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and D1
ABMA-Vade-mecum	Gardin NE, Schleier R: Medicamentos Antroposóficos: Vademecum. Associação Brasileira de Medicina Antroposófica. São Paolo: Editora João de Barro; 2009
ANVISA	Agência Nacional de Vigilância Sanitária (Brazilian Health Regulatory Agency)
APC	Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex
aph	ad preparationes homoeopathicae
API	Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient
C1	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and 1C
CVD	Chemical Vapour Decomposition
D1	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and 1X
DAB	Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)
DAC	Deutscher Arzneimittel-Codex (German Codex of Medicinal Products)
DER	Drug extract ratio
EU	European Union
fhp	for homoeopathic preparations
GHP	German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia. Unauthorized translation of the HAB. In case of differences between the GHP and the HAB the latter is decisive
Gl	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB method 41 using glycerol
H 2.2.6	Analytical method specified in the HAB
HAB	Deutsches Homöopathisches Arzneibuch (German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia)
HPUS	The Homœopathic Pharmacopœia of the United States
IAAP	International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
IVAA statement 2019	see p. 71
KC Mono-graph	Monograph of the "Kommission C" (Commission of the German Ministry of Health for the anthroposophic therapeutic system and substances), published in the official Gazette of the German government (in German: "Bundesanzeiger")
Liste HAS	Liste der Homöopathischen und Anthropo-sophischen Stoffe (Anhang 4 zurVerordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln) [List of Homoeopathic and Anthroposophic Subtances (Appendix 4 in the Regulation of the Swissmedic concerning the simplified Authorisation of Complementary and Herbal Medicinal Products in Switzerland)]
LM	Symbol for potencies prepared according to Ph.Eur. (2371) 5.2
MT	Mother tincture
Ph.Br.	Brazilian Pharmacopoeia (Farmacopoeia Brassileira)
Ph.Eur.	European Pharmacopoeia
Ph.Eur. Hom.	see Ph.Eur. (2371)
Ph.Eur. (2371)	Ph.Eur. Monograph 2371 "Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation"
Ph.fr.	Pharmacopée Française (French Pharma-copoeia), including monographies de souches pour préparations homéopathiques (monographs of the stocks for homoeopathic preparations)
Ph.Helv.	Pharmacopoea Helvetica (Swiss Pharmacopoeia)

Ph.Hom. Br.	Brazilian Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia
pph	pour préparations homéopathiques
Q	Symbol for potencies diluted by the ratio 1: 50 000
Rh	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1 and 1.5.2 (rhythmic procedure)

Ø	mother tincture (HAB)
Vade-mecum	Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland (ed.), Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel 5. erw. Auflage 2024

Glossary

In this glossary only those terms are referred to, that need extra clarification prior to the definitions given in part I.

Anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention	An intention transferring substances and processes of nature to enable equilibrium in humans.
Composition	In the production of anthroposophic preparations by composition, two or more starting materials and/or preparations, with or without excipients or vehicle, are transformed with anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention into a pharmaceutical preparation[1] by one or more pharmaceutical processes. A composition is more than the sum of its components. The difference from a mixture is the anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention taking into account the healing need and the process we want to address.
Dilution	A liquid active substance or intermediate, produced by potentisation of a raw material or a mother tincture.
Excipient	Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of pharmaceutical dosage forms, mixtures or compositions.
Extracts of herbal drugs	Herbal drug extracts are liquid (liquid extraction preparations), semi-solid (soft extracts and oleoresins) or solid (dry extracts) preparations obtained from Herbal drugs (1433) using suitable solvents. An extract is essentially defined by the quality of the herbal drug, by its production process and by its specifications.
Mother tincture	Mother tinctures are liquid preparations obtained by the solvent action of a suitable vehicle upon raw materials and produced according to a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure. The raw materials of botanical origin are usually in the fresh form but may be dried. Mother tinctures for homoeopathic preparations may also be obtained from plant juices, with or without the addition of a vehicle. For some preparations, the matter to be extracted may undergo a preliminary treatment. See also stocks.
Pharmaceutical process	General term for substance transformations at different stages to obtain starting materials for medicinal products or a medicinal product.

Potentisation	A method used in homoeopathy to produce dilutions and triturations from stocks and starting materials by successive dilutions and succussions, rhythm as a third aspect is considered crucial.
Preparation/active substance	A class of processed starting material specified in the monographs of part II.
Production method	A general manufacturing procedure specified in a pharmacopoeia (see e.g. Ph.Eur., HAB).
Raw material	Raw materials for the production of anthroposophic preparations may be of natural or synthetic origin. A raw material of botanical, zoological or human origin may be used either in the fresh (or frozen) state or in the dried state.
Starting material	Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic preparations may be of natural or synthetic (processed) origin. For the purpose of the APC the terms raw and starting material are used as synonyms.
Stocks	Stocks are substances, products or preparations used as starting materials for the production of anthroposophic preparations. A stock is usually one of the following: a mother tincture or a glycerol macerate, for raw materials of botanical, zoological or human origin, or the substance itself, for raw materials of chemical or mineral origin.
Tinctures	Tinctures are liquid extraction preparations that are obtained by the solvent action of a suitable vehicle upon raw materials. The raw materials are usually in the fresh form but may be dried. For some preparations, the matter to be extracted may undergo a preliminary treatment.
Triturations	A solid active substance, produced by potentisation of a solid raw material.
Vehicle	The vehicle is selected and used to incorporate the medicinal effect of the raw material. This transforms the product manufactured through pharmaceutical processes, e.g., Ferrum phosphoricum D6, into the active ingredient.

[1]Pharmaceutical preparation, Definition Ph.Eur. (2619)
Pharmaceutical preparations are medicinal products generally consisting of active substances that may be combined with excipients, formulated into a dosage form suitable for the intended use, where necessary after reconstitution, presented in a suitable and appropriately labelled container.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IA

Definitions

PART IA
Definitions 15
1. Anthroposophic medicinal product 16
2. Starting materials, general information 16
2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters 17
2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin 17
2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin 17
2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically 18
2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods) 18
2.6. Compositions 18
3. Vehicles and excipients 18
4. Active substances 18
4.1. Starting materials 18
4.2. Preparations 18

1. Anthroposophic medicinal product

DEFINITION

An anthroposophic medicinal product is conceived, developed and produced in accordance with the anthroposophic knowledge of man, nature, substance and pharmaceutical processing[1]. The application within anthroposophic medicine results from that knowledge[2].

According to anthroposophic principles, active substances may be starting materials which are used as such or starting materials which have been transformed into active substances by a process of anthroposophic pharmacy, including compositions.

An anthroposophic medicinal product can contain one or more active substances (see also part IA, chapter 4).

An anthroposophic medicinal product can fundamentally be employed in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms (see also part IIc).

PRODUCTION

The active substances or dosage forms of anthroposophic medicinal products are produced:

- in accordance with classical homoeopathic or anthroposophic-homoeopathic manufacturing methods as described in the Ph.Eur., HAB, Ph.fr., and Ph.Helv.
- in accordance with anthroposophic pharmaceutical codex production methods, i.e. "APC Methods"

and/or

- in accordance with anthroposophic manufacturing methods described in the individual monograph.

An anthroposophic medicinal product complies with the relevant specifications/ monographs set out in parts IB, IIA and IIB.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Concerning the *designation* of anthroposophic medicinal products a reference to the APC is recommended.

2. Starting materials, general information

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products are:

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods)

2.6. Compositions (for further information see "Glossary")

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with any relevant monograph in the European Pharmacopoeia or in the absence thereof, with the relevant monographs in national pharmacopoeias used in the Member States, or in absence thereof with the individual monograph.

Starting materials can be active substances themselves or can be processed into preparations (see also Part IA, chapter 4).

[1] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy",https://iaap-pharma.org/wp-content/uploads/2024/10/Basic_Information_on_the_Working_Principles_of_Anthroposophic_Pharmacy.pdf

[2] For clarification it has to be mentioned here, that anthroposophic medicine from the beginning includes "Over the Counter" products (OTC). A part of its medicinal products had been conceived right from the start for broad use for typical health disorders; see Chapter XX, "Typical Remedies", in Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: "Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.
In English: "Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press, London, GB, 1996.

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters
Minerals are solid, crystalline components of natural origin belonging to the earth's crust and other celestial bodies. A mineral has a defined crystal system and crystal class. Minerals are chemically and physically homogeneous to a significant extent. In reality, however, there are always deviations from the theoretical mineral formula. Many minerals may show differences in their colours. Form and habitus may be significantly different within the same type.

Rocks are composed of one or more minerals having a geological definition and distribution in their natural deposit with a certain statistical homogeneity.

Pieces that will be used for production should be big enough to allow mineralogical identification. If a powdered mineral is used, adequate documentation should ensure the quality and natural origin. In fact pieces used for production must be free from visible foreign matter. They have not undergone any unwanted mechanical or chemical treatment: in particular any chemical reaction, colouring, varnishing, heating and artificial radiation must be excluded. The amount of foreign matter accepted after chemical analysis is specified in the respective monograph.

Natural waters can come from a natural source (e.g. Levico), from the sea (e.g. aqua maris) or from mineral cavities (e.g. agate water).

List of minerals, rocks, including natural waters: see part III, appendix 2.1.

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Starting materials of botanical origin are:
- Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
- Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

Fresh plants should be used shortly after harvest. If this is not possible, the quality is guaranteed by appropriate measures, e.g. freezing.

If material from cultivated plants is used preference should be given to materials from plants cultivated by biodynamic cultivation ("Demeter" certified) or by other certified organic cultivation methods in accordance to the relevant European regulations ruling organic agricultural products (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91).
If wild plants are harvested protection of species according to relevant regulations is granted and special care is taken of the eco-system concerned.

Plants or parts of plants are, as far as possible, free from impurities such as soil, dust, dirt and other contaminants such as fungal, insect and other animal contaminations. They are not decayed.

Harvested plants or the mother tinctures made thereof are analysed for content of heavy metals and pesticides. The range and frequency of this testing can occur according to a monitoring plan based on risk assessment.

Unless otherwise stated, the collecting or harvesting times are generally:

Whole plants with underground parts and plants without underground parts	at flowering time
Leaves and shoots	when fully developed
Flowers	shortly after opening
Bark	throughout the year
Underground parts of annual plants	at seed ripening time
Underground parts of biennial and perennial plants	in spring
Fruits and seeds	at the time of ripening
Fungi	when the fruiting bodies are fully developed

Particle size: according to Ph.Eur. 2.1.4 Sieves.

Starting materials of botanical origin see part III, appendix 2.2.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Starting materials of zoological origin are:
- Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
- Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

Lower animals as well as warm-blooded animals are used.

Animal husbandry and keeping must be adequate for the animal species (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91). In particular in the case of warm-blooded species animals from well-monitored "Demeter" or biodynamic herds are preferentially used.

The starting materials of zoological origin must meet the requirements of the European and/ or relevant national pharmacopoeias regarding the preparation of medicinal products from materials of animal origin and with EU directives and/or national guidelines of the appropriate regulatory authorities.
In particular the Ph.Eur. monographs on TSE safety (Ph.Eur. 50208), and viral safety (Ph.Eur. 50107) apply.

Animals must be healthy and in good hygienic condition. The intervals given in legislation after the administration of drugs to animals must be observed before the animals are used.

Health requirements, animal keeping, protection of species and processing of animals must comply with the relevant guidelines of responsible national authorities and those of the European Union, where applicable.

List of starting materials of zoological origin see part III, appendix 2.3.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically
Starting materials that can be described chemically are inorganic and organic substances.
Organic substances are generally of natural origin, e.g. purified fractions.

Preference should be given to clearly traceable substances, that comply with the quality standards in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3.

List of starting materials that can be described chemically see part III, appendix 2.4.

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods)
Starting materials that have undergone a special treatment are: e.g. plants, parts of plants cultivated by special treatment (see part IIA, chapter 1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures).

List of starting materials that have undergone special treatment see part III appendix 2.5.

2.6. Compositions
In the production of anthroposophic preparations by composition, two or more starting materials and/ or preparations, with or without excipients or vehicle, are transformed with anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention into a pharmaceutical preparation by one or more pharmaceutical processes. A composition is more than the sum of its components. The difference from a mixture is the anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention taking into account the healing need and the process we want to address.[1]

List of compositions see part III, appendix 2.6.

3. Vehicles and excipients

Vehicles are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of active substances (e.g. ethanol to obtain an extract or lactose monohydrate to obtain a potentised preparation). Vehicles are also used in the production of mixtures and compositions (see part IIA, chapter 9).

Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of the pharmaceutical dosage forms (e.g. NaCl to obtain an isotonic solution for parenteral preparations). Excipients are also used in the production of mixtures and compositions (see part IIA, chapter 7 and 9).

Vehicles and excipients used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with the relevant requirements of the European Pharmacopoeia or of the national pharmacopoeias used in the EU Member States.

4. Active substances

4.1. Starting materials
Active substances can be starting materials themselves or preparations.
Starting material used directly as active substances may be the final dosage form, e.g. a herbal tea.

4.2. Preparations
Preparations are obtained from one or more starting materials.

Preparations comply with the specifications described in part IIA or in the individual monograph.

Preparations can be the final dosage form or can be processed further, e.g. to obtain mixtures.

[1] As an example see: "Biodoron/Kephalodoron" , in Persephone N° 12, M. Kohlhase editor; publisher Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach, CH, 1998.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IB

Reagents

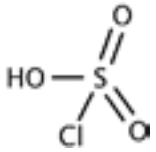
PART IB
Reagents 20
1. Reference standards 21
Chlorosulfonic acid R (APC) 21
Eleutheroside B R (APC) 21
Ribonuclease A R (APC) 21

1. Reference standards

The quality must be described in an in-house monograph.

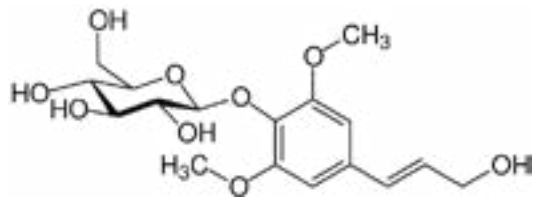
2. Reagents

Chlorosulfonic acid R *(APC)*



$ClSO_3H$ (M_r 116.52)
CAS-No. 7790-94-5.
Synonyms: chlorosulfuric acid, sulfurochloridic acid.
Colourless to yellow-greenish coloured, clear liquid, strongly fuming in air.

Eleutheroside B R *(APC)*



$C_{17}H_{24}O_9$ (Mr 372,37)
CAS-No. 118-34-3.
4-[(1E)-3-hydroxy-1-propen-1-yl]-2,6-dimethoxyphenyl-β-D-glucopyranoside.
Melting point: about 192°C.
White to almost white crystalline powder or colourless, acicular crystals.

Ribonuclease A R *(APC)*

CAS-No. 9001-99-4.
Enzyme, isolated from bovine pancreas.
Molecular weight about 13700 Da.
White to almost white powder.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART II Monographs

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIA

Methods for anthroposophic preparations

PART IIA
Methods for anthroposophic preparations 24
Introduction 26
SURVEY OF GENERAL METHODS.....28
CORRELATION TABLE OF GENERAL METHODS.....30
CORRELATION TABLE Ph.Eur./HAB to HPUS ..32
1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS 35
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods ("vegetabilised metals") 35
2. METAL PREPARATIONS 36
2.1. Metal mirrors 36
3. TINCTURES, MOTHER TINCTURES, GLYCEROL MACERATES AND VISCOUS EXTRACTS 37
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof 37
3.2. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water.....38
3.3. Glycerol macerates 39
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil 41
3.5. Mother tinctures made by percolation 41
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence / *deleted* *42*
3.7. Fermented mother tinctures 42
3.8. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion (Digestio) 47
3.9. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion (Infusum) 48
3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction) 50
3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment.....51
3.12. Preparations made by distillation (Distillates) 51
3.13. Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold 52
4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT 54
4.1. Toasted preparations – Tosta.....54
4.2. Carbons – Carbones 54
4.3. Ashes – Cineres 55
5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE).....55
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants 55
5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or liquid extracts.....56
6. LIQUID DILUTIONS.....57

7. COMPOSITIONS 57
7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes 57
7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures of one plant by one or more pharmaceutical processes 58
7.3. Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together 60
7.4. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes.....60
7.5. Compositions made by co-potentising.....60
7.6. Compositions including the dosage form and its excipients 61
8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS 61
8.1. Co-potentised preparations 61
8.2. Semi-solid potencies 62
8.3. Solid potencies 63
8.4. Liquid potencies 63
9. MIXTURES 64

Introduction

Brief description of the main pharmaceutical processes applied in anthroposophic pharmacy

Several pharmaceutical processes are described in existing homoeopathic pharmacopoeias as "production methods". These homoeopathic pharmacopoeial production methods can be seen as examples of the general anthroposophic pharmaceutical principle described in the general APC monographs of part IIa.

In anthroposophic pharmacy the treatment of the raw or starting materials can already be part of the pharmaceutical processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a metal or mineral preparation.
Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

Preparations can be differentiated according to the thermal condition or treatment in the pharmaceutical process. Hereby follows a scheme concerning the related pharmaceutical processes applied to plant material and the main sphere of action.

The duration of the pharmaceutical processes is also important for the production of a preparation and is therefore prescribed in the specific methods in pharmacopoeias (cf. the survey on the following pages).

Treatments in liquid phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat/cold degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Cold maceration	2 – 8 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	System of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Maceration	15 – 25 °C	fresh plants, all parts	system of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Rhythmic processing	4/37 °C	fresh plants, all parts	rhythmic system
Digestion	37 °C	fresh plants, leaves, flowers	rhythmic system, circulation
Infusion	60 – 90 °C	dried leaves, flowers	metabolic system, any type of gland
Decoction	ca 100 °C	dried roots, barks, seeds	metabolic system, digestive tract (stomach, intestine)
Distillation	steam, ca 100 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	metabolic system, digestion

Treatments in dry phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Toasting	170 – 250 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	metabolic system, digestion (liver)
Carbonisation	above 200 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	metabolic system, kidney organisation
Ash process	above 500 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	region of the lungs (respiration)

[1]

Additionally a standing time is applied for many preparations in order to facilitate their maturation. A standing time can be part of the preparation method, e.g. for mother tinctures, extracts, compositions, mixtures or potentised preparations. The standing time may be different for different types of preparations and has to be defined in accordance with the characteristics of the preparation.

Preparations may be the final dosage form, be incorporated into the final dosage form or be processed further, e.g. by potentisation.

A crucially important pharmaceutical process is potentisation:

- Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid potencies) has been carried out.
- During this process, the surface areas of the vehicle and the substance to be potentised are increased, and an even distribution is ensured by thorough mixing. The potentising time differs for different vehicles (e.g. solids and liquids). Anthroposophic pharmacy mainly uses decimal attenuations. For co-potentised preparations the ratio between active substances and the vehicle may vary, differing from 1:10 for homoeopathic co-potentising methods (see also Part IIa, 8. Potentised Preparations). Excluded periods for potentisation are normally due to cosmological aspects e.g. the time of day or solar eclipse related to the starting material.

[1] General scheme for the correlation between spheres of therapeutic action/ degree of potentisation:

Mother tincture – D10	Metabolic system
D11-D20	Rhythmic system
>D20	System of nerves and senses

See also:
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, "The System of Anthroposophic Medicine", pp. 26-28 at https://www.ivaa.info/anthroposophic-medicine/introduction/

[2] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, https://iaap-pharma.org/fileadmin/user_upload/pdf/publications/Basic_Information_on_the_Working_Principles_of_Anthroposophic_Pharmacy.pdf Meyer U. & Pedersen P.A. (ed.): Anthroposophische Pharmazie, Salumed Verlag Berlin 2016.

SURVEY OF GENERAL METHODS

Survey of general methods for the manufacturing of anthroposophic medicinal products and related specific production methods in pharmacopoeias.

General method of the APC	Related specific production method			
	Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371)	HAB	Ph.Helv.	APC
1. Special treatment of raw materials				
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures			17.7.1.1, 17.7.1.2	1.1.1, 1.1.2
2. Metal preparations				
2.1. Metal mirrors			17.7.2.1 – 17.7.2.4	2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
3. Tinctures and oil extracts				
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof		38	17.7.6	
3.2. Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water	1.1.1 – 1.1.11 1.3.1	12b, c, m, n, o, p, q	17.7.7.1	3.2.1, 3.2.2
3.3. Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol	2.1.1 – 2.1.3 2.2.1 – 2.2.4			3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.3.3
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil				3.4.1
3.5. Tinctures made by percolation	1.1.8 – 1.1.9		17.7.7.2	3.5.1
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures under exclusion of oxidative influence		32		
3.7. Fermented tinctures		53	17.7.7.3	3.7.1
3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)	1.2.1 – 1.2.6 1.4.1		17.7.8.1	3.8.1, 3.8.2
3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)	1.2.13, 1.4.4		17.7.8.3	3.9.1, 3.9.2, 3.9.3
3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)	1.2.7 – 1.2.12 1.4.2 – 1.4.3	12k, l	17.7.8.4	3.10.1
3.11.Viscous extracts with heat treatment		12d – g, 57		

General method of the APC	Related specific production method			
	Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371)	**HAB**	**Ph.Helv.**	**APC**
3.12. Preparations made by distillation		52	17.7.8.5	3.12.1, 3.12.2
3.13. Tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold	1.5.1-1.5.2	33 – 37, 51	17.7.9	3.13.1, 3.13.2.
4. Solid starting materials obtained by heat				
4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)			17.7.4.1	4.1
4.2. Carbons (Carbones)			17.7.4.2	4.2
4.3. Ashes (Cineres)			17.7.4.3	4.3
5. Solid preparations from plants and liquids (drying onto a vehicle)				
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants	4.1.1		17.7.5.1	5.1.1
5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts	4.2.1 – 4.2.2		17.7.5.2	5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3
6. Liquid dilutions	3.1.1 – 3.1.3			
7. Compositions			17.7.3	7.2.1 – 7.2.4
8. Potentised preparations Potentising specifications in:	1 – 5	12j 11, 15, 32 – 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53		8.1.1, 8.1.2, 8.2.1, 8.2.2 Other APC Methods 8.3
9. Mixtures		12a, 12h, 12i, 16		

Note: How to read the table: Specific production methods are published in different pharmacopoeias e.g. in the Ph.Eur. or in the HAB. If a method (e.g. HAB 49), has been transferred into the Ph.Eur. (2371, 1.3.1), the number is no longer listed in the HAB column. Anthroposophic medicinal products may also be manufactured in accordance with individual specifications or monographs, see also Part I, chapter 1: For a correlation table, cf. the following pages.

CORRELATION TABLE OF GENERAL METHODS

HAB to other pharmacopoeias

	Correspondence * Methods without a corresponding method in the HAB are used for preparation according to monographs of the Ph.fr. only					
	HAB	**Ph.Eur. Hom.**	**Ph.Helv. or Ph.fr**	**APC** (figures in brackets: related method)	**used for (raw material from)**	**Ethanolic concentration of tincture (approx.) or extraction liquid (Ph.Eur.)**
Tinctures made by maceration	1 a 1 b	1.1.1 1.1.2	17.7.7.1 17.7.7.1		fresh plant fresh plant latex	ethanol 50 % V/V ethanol 36 % V/V
	2 a 2 b	1.1.3 1.1.4	17.7.7.1 17.7.7.1		fresh plant fresh plant	ethanol 50 % V/V ethanol 36 % V/V
	3 a 3 b 3 c	1.1.5 1.1.6 1.1.7	17.7.7.1 17.7.7.1 17.7.7.1		fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant	ethanol 65 % V/V ethanol 57 % V/V ethanol 35 % V/V
Tinctures made by maceration / percolation	4 a 4 b	1.1.8 1.1.9	17.7.7.2 17.7.7.2	(3.5.1)	dried herbal drugs animal origin	ethanol, see monographs ethanol, see monographs
Tinctures made by maceration	* *	1.1.10 1.1.11	Ph.fr. Ph.fr.		fresh plant or dried herbal drug animal origin	ethanol, see monographs ethanol, see monographs
Dilutions	5 a 5 b	3.1.1 3.1.2				ethanol, see monographs water
Triturations of solid raw material	6 *	4.1.1 4.1.2	 Ph.fr.			
Tritarations of liquids	7	4.2.1				
Liquid preparations made from triturations	8 a 8 b	3.2.1 3.2.2				
Tinctures made by digestion	18 a 18 b 18 c 18 d 18 e 18 f	1.2.1 1.2.2 1.2.3 1.2.4 1.2.5 1.2.6	17.7.8.1 17.7.8.1 17.7.8.1 17.7.8.1 17.7.8.1 17.7.8.1	(3.8) (3.8) (3.8) (3.8) (3.8) (3.8)	fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant dried herbal drugs	ethanol 50 % V/V ethanol 36 % V/V ethanol 65 % V/V ethanol 57 % V/V ethanol 35 % V/V ethanol, see monographs
Tinctures made by decoction	19 a 19 b 19 c 19 d 19 e 19 f	1.2.7 1.2.8 1.2.9 1.2.10 1.2.11 1.2.12	17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4	(3.10) (3.10) (3.10) (3.10) (3.10) (3.10)	fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant fresh plant dried herbal drugs	ethanol 50 % V/V ethanol 36 % V/V ethanol 65 % V/V ethanol 57 % V/V ethanol 35 % V/V ethanol, see monographs
Tinctures made by infusion	20	1.2.13	17.7.8.3	(3.9)	dried herbal drugs	ethanol, see monographs
Mother tinctures obtained by fermentation (rhythmic conditions)	21	1.5.1	17.7.9	(3.13.1)	fresh plant	
	22	1.5.2	17.7.9	(3.13.2)	fresh plant	
Aqueous mother tinctures made by decoction	23 a 23 b	1.4.3 1.4.2	17.7.8.4 17.7.8.4	3.10	dried herbal drugs fresh plant	water water

	Correspondence * Methods without a corresponding method in the HAB are used for preparation according to monographs of the Ph.fr. only					
	HAB	**Ph.Eur. Hom.**	**Ph.Helv. or Ph.fr**	**APC** (figures in brackets: related method)	**used for (raw material from)**	**Ethanolic concentration of tincture (approx.) or extraction liquid (Ph.Eur.)**
Aqueous mother tinctures						
made by infusion	24 a	1.4.4	17.7.8.3	3.9	dried herbal drugs	water
made by digestion	24 b	1.4.1	17.7.8.1	3.8	fresh plant	water
Co-potentising	40 a	5.1.1		8.1.2		
	40 b	5.1.2		8.1.2		
	40 c	5.1.3		-		
Tinctures made by maceration	41 a	2.2.1		3.3	animal origin	glycerol
	41 b	2.2.2			animal origin	glycerol
	41 c	2.2.3			animal origin	glycerol
	41 d	2.2.4			blood components (from live horses)	glycerol
	42 a	2.1.1		3.3	animal origin	glycerol
	42 b	2.1.2			animal origin	glycerol
	*	2.1.3	Ph.fr.		herbal or animal origin	ethanol or glycerol, see monographs
Tinctures made by maceration	49	1.3.1			fresh plant	water

Corresponding table for ethanol concentration listed in HAB methods of production (H.5.4.4) and Ph.Eur. Hom. monograph 2371	HAB methods of production (H.5.4.4): ethanol concentration	Ph.Eur. Hom. 2371 ethanol concentration
	94 per cent m/m	96 per cent V/V
	86 per cent m/m	90 per cent V/V
	73 per cent m/m	80 per cent V/V
	62 per cent m/m	70 per cent V/V
	43 per cent m/m	50 per cent V/V
	30 per cent m/m	36 per cent V/V
	15 per cent m/m	18 per cent V/V

CORRELATION TABLE Ph.Eur./HAB to HPUS

Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing methods in the HPUS

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.1 (HAB 1a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.2 (HAB 1b)	Class O
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.3 (HAB 2a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.4 (HAB 2b)	Class M
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.5 (HAB 3a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.6 (HAB 3b) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.7 (HAB 3c)	Class N
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.8 (HAB 4a)	Class C
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.9 (HAB 4b)	Class E
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class C is the same process for the first step [1]
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class D is the same process for the first step [2]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.1 (HAB 5a)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.2 (HAB 5b)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.1 (HAB 6)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.2 (Ph. fr.)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.2.1 (HAB 7)	“Medication: Medicated Powders” applies for centesimal, but not for decimal attenuations [3]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.1 (HAB 8a) Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.2 (HAB 8b)	Class H

1 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 produces a 1:10 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class C also produces a 1:10 preparation. But this is considered the same as a D1. Thus, Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 D1 = HPUS D2. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.

2 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 produces a 1:20 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class D also produces a 1:20 preparation. But the Class D preparation is then attenuated 2 parts + 8 parts vehicle to produce the D2. The preparation by Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 is attenuated 1 part + 9 parts vehicle to produce the D1. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.

3 HPUS “Medicated Powders” are specified to be made from 1 part liquid preparation + 100 parts vehicle.

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS
HAB Method 9	“Medication: Tablets”
HAB Method 10	“Medication: Globules”
HAB Method 11	“Forms of vehicles for dispensing”
HAB Method 12a	“Forms of vehicles for dispensing”
HAB Method 12b	Class M
HAB Method 13	“Forms of vehicles for dispensing”
HAB Method 14	“Forms of vehicles for dispensing”
HAB Method 15	“Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Ophthalmic Solutions”
HAB Method 16	New Section 39, and “Introduction to the Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia of the United States: Statement regarding combinations of homoeopathic drugs”
Ph.Eur. Methods 5.2 (HAB 17)	“Attenuations: Fifty Millesimal Scale of Attenuation”
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.1-2 (HAB 18a-b)	Class M, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation”
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.3-5 (HAB 18c-e)	Class N, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation”
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.6 (HAB 18f)	Class C, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation”
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.7-8 (HAB 19a-b)	Class M, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction”
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.9-11 (HAB 19c-e)	Class N, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction”
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.12 (HAB 19f)	Class C, “Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction”

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	**Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS**
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.13 (HAB 20)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Method 21	Class O, fermented
HAB Method 22	Class P
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.3 (HAB 23a)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.2 (HAB 23b)	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.4 (HAB 24a)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Methods 33	Class P
HAB Methods 34	Class P
HAB Methods 35	Class P
HAB Methods 36	Class P
Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.1 (HAB 40a) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.2 (HAB 40b) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.3 (HAB 40c)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.1 (HAB 42a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.2 (HAB 42b)	Class L, Method II
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.3 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.1 (HAB 41a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.2 (HAB 41b) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.3 (HAB 41c) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.4 (HAB 41d)	Class L, Method II (alternate methodology)
HAB Methods 45	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Nasal Solutions"
HAB Methods 51	Class P

1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS

In anthroposophic pharmacy treatment of the raw materials can be part of the pharmaceutically relevant processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a preparation of a mineral, normally containing a specific metal.

1.1. Vegetabilisation methods ("vegetabilised metals")

DEFINITION

Vegetabilisation of substances can be considered as a particular kind of potentising process of metals or minerals taking place through nature. The potentising process is carried out with plants and normally goes through three life cycles. The life cycle means one vegetation period (growing season) for annual, and two growing seasons for biennial plants. The substance and appropriate plant are chosen in accordance with the rationale of anthroposophic understanding of man and nature.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCES

See APC Method 1.1.1 and 1.1.2.

CULTIVATION

The cultivation of vegetabilised metals is a three years process (for biennial plants 6 years), meaning three generations of plants are grown until the final plant can be further processed, for example to a mother tincture. This process is basically the same for each specific metal (mineral)-plant combination.
Important for the cultivation process is, that each plant grows in the cultivation substrate and field soil specifically prepared for each vegetation period.
The following is a cultivation description for each of the three growing seasons or life cycles.
Exemptions have to be prescribed in individual monographs (e.g. Bryophyllum, Equisetum arvense and Thuja occidentalis).

1st life cycle:
The seeds are sown in soil, which has been treated with a diluted preparation of the concerned inorganic substance (approximately 50 – 200 g/m²). Alternatively, jars with cultivation substrate, mixed with 5 – 20 g diluted preparation/L can be used. In this case, the young growing plants are transferred to soil, which has been treated as mentioned above.
When the plants reach their full development, i.e. in the flowering stage, compost is made from these plants. For preparing that compost, the upper aerial parts of the specific plant are used as prescribed in the individual monograph; the flowers or/and the leaves with petioles, possibly with stalks, but no woody parts are included. The plant material is mixed together with neutral plant-compost which activates the first composting processes. This metal plant-compost mixture is stored in terracotta pots which are buried almost completely in the soil in the same field used in that growing season. The composting process is continued during the whole winter until the next spring.
In spring the compost is completed and ready to be used to treat the plants of the next growing season, the second life cycle.

2nd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil, which was treated with the compost, made from the plant of the 1st growing season. These plants (of the second life cycle) are also grown to their specific plant development stage (i.e. flowering). Compost is made from these plants, which is prepared in a way similar to the compost of the plants of the first life cycle. This compost is stored in terracotta pots, buried in the soil, in the field of the plants of the second life cycle.

3rd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil which was treated with compost made from the plants of the second vegetation period. The plants of the third growing season (third vegetation period) are cultivated to their specified harvest stage.

FURTHER PROCESSING

The harvested plants are processed into a mother tincture according to a manufacturing method of the Ph.Eur., HAB or the APC or are otherwise processed.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY

According to the relevant tincture monograph (See Part IIA, chapters in section 3) or dried herbal drug.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fertilised plant,
- the substance used,
- the designation "cultum", "culta",
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Examples: Tabacum Cupro cultum APC, Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum APC

Specific pharmacopoeia/APC production methods to produce vegetabilised substances

APC Method 1.1.1 Vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin ("vegetabilised metals")
For the vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin plants are treated with a diluted substance, prepared from either a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore).

PREPARATION OF METALLIC SUBSTANCE
The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore). This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing the metal in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate, the result being the metal substance D1: the content of the metal is 8 – 12 %. The metal substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted metal substance that is ready for use. The calculated metal content of this diluted metal substance differs, according to the toxicity and natural abundance of the metal in the soil:

Au, Ag, Pb, Sn, Hg:	max. 100 ppm
Fe, Cu:	max. 1000 ppm

APC Method 1.1.2 Vegetabilisation of silicates
For the vegetabilisation of silicates plants are treated with appropriate mineral containing silica.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCE
The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a pulverised mineral silicate. This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing silicium in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate; the result is the silica, particularly quartz substance D1: the content of silicium is 8 – 12 %, calculated as silicium dioxide .
The silica, particularly quartz substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted silica, particularly quartz substance that is ready for use. The calculated content is max. 1 % silicium dioxide.

2. METAL PREPARATIONS

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

2.1. Metal mirrors

DEFINITION
By producing metal mirrors the metal is transformed through different states of aggregation.The metals or metal salts can be brought through a liquid state (melted or as solution), gas state or plasmatic state to be subsequently (obtained again) condensed in solid state as the pure metal.
Metal mirrors are deposits of metals in reduced state onto a surface by a specific method of production.

Metal mirrors, produced according to APC methods 2.1.1, 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 can be removed from the surface and may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. method 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 and HAB method 48.

TESTS
The following analytical tests are always carried out for the metal which is used as starting material to produce the mirror. The metal mirror itself is only tested when it is produced by the method of reduction of metal salts (2.1.3), the method of chemical vapour decomposition (2.1.2) or the method of sputtering (2.1.4). The metal mirror produced by the method of distillation (2.1.1) is tested after further processing as the first or second produced dilution.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one suitable identification test is carried out.

TESTS
see the individual monograph.

ASSAY
Content according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the metal used,
- the designation "metallicum praeparatum" (abbreviated met.praep.) or in the case of metal mirror foil the name of the metal followed of the word "mirror foil",
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,

Examples: Argentum metallicum praeparatum APC 2.1.1., Cuprum mirror foil APC 2.1.4.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to prepare metal mirrors

APC Method 2.1.1 Metal mirrors obtained by distillation
Metal mirrors prepared by distillation are obtained from the pure metal.
The pure metal is heated in appropriate equipment under vacuum until it evaporates. The temperature and the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal is distilled. The metal vapour condenses onto the surface of the cooler parts of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed after cooling from the surface.
The exact conditions of the distillation are described in the individual monograph.

APC Method 2.1.2. Metal mirrors obtained by Chemical Vapour Decomposition, CVD
Metal mirrors prepared by chemical vapour decomposition are obtained from a volatile metal compound.
A volatile metal compound is distilled under vacuum in appropriate equipment. The temperature and the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal compound is distilled. The vapour is further heated until decomposition of the metal compound. As a result, the pure metal condenses onto the surface of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. After cooling the metal mirror is removed from the surface.

APC Method 2.1.3. Metal mirrors obtained by reduction
Metal mirrors prepared by reduction are obtained from an appropriate metal salt.
To a solution of a metal salt an appropriate reducing agent and reagents are added. The pure metal precipitates onto the surface of the reaction vessel producing the metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface, filtered from the solution, washed with purified water and ethanol (the concentration of ethanol depending of the nature of the used reagents), until foreign matters are no longer detectable in the rinsing water and then dried.

APC Method 2.1.4. Metal mirror foil
Metal mirror foils are prepared by magnetron atomization, a sputter technique. The metal is transformed into a plasma state and condensed onto a substrate as a metal mirror.
Using this plasma coating technique, the metal is released not by vapourisation through heating but the atoms are separated from the solid metal by bombardment with high energy ions and directly converted to the gaseous phase. The metal vapour so produced, condenses onto a substrate (e.g. PET foil) as a thin metal layer that with a layer thickness of 45 to 60 nm is highly reflective and can thus be used as a metal mirror. The metal mirror foil is then covered with a cotton overlay.
The metal mirror foils must not be further processed and are used externally.

TESTS
Thickness of the mirror.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
for external use only.

3. TINCTURES, MOTHER TINCTURES, GLYCEROL MACERATES AND VISCOUS EXTRACTS

Tinctures, mother tinctures, glycerol macerates and viscous extracts are obtained from starting materials from botanical or zoological origin by pharmaceutical processes under cold condition (2 – 8 °C), at ambient temperature (15 – 25 °C), with heat treatment at different temperatures, by rhythmic application of heat and cold, by fermentation as well as by distillation. If applicable, vehicles e.g. water, ethanol, water/ethanol mixtures, glycerol, oils may be used. They may be processed further.

3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof

DEFINITION
Cold treated mother tinctures are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs. The maceration is carried out at a temperature of 2 – 8 °C using purified water, water for injections or isotonic solution.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted.
The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container, where applicable protected from light, for an appropriate time (at least 7 days). Shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained under cold conditions (2 – 8 °C)
HAB Method 38

3.2. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

DEFINITION
Tinctures and mother tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water are liquids and are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at a temperature not above 25 °C by using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted; animals are processed immediately after killing. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, where applicable protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used. If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Ethanol content *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.10)*. Where applicable, the ethanol content complies with that prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,

the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods
1.1.1 – 11
1.3.1
HAB Methods
1 – 4
12b, c, m, n, o

APC Method 3.2.1 (related to Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 1.1.8)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.2.1 are prepared using the maceration methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from the equation given in Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

POTENTISATION
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 36 per cent *(V/V)* for D4 and then 18 per cent (*V/V*) for subsequent dilutions from D5 onwards and proceed accordingly.

APC Method 3.2.2 (related to HAB Method 12a)
Preparations according to APC Method 3.2.2 are tinctures for external use. They are prepared as follows: Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 10 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration
(see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.
Glycerol may be added up to 10 per cent.

3.3. Glycerol macerates

DEFINITION
Glycerol macerates comply with the definition in Ph.Eur. monograph 1038. They are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) using glycerol of a suitable concentration or a glycerol solution containing sodium chloride.

PRODUCTION
Lower animals are killed immediately before processing; the parts of warm-blooded animals are processed immediately after being killed. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering. Comminute the matter to be extracted. Add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at a temperature not above 25 °C, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the starting material of botanical or animal origin used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic or electrophoretic (animal matter) identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Conductivity *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.38).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph. Alternatively, the refractive index can be used.
Refractive index (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.6*). Where applicable (preparations according to APC Methods 3.3.1 and 3.3.2), the refractive index of the preparation is measured in appropriate equipment, this measure indicates the water content in the glycerol[1], and this value is called η_m indicating the refractive index of the macerate. This measure is used to calculate the proportion of glycerol of the macerate. This calculation is made based on the following equation:

$$\%\ Glycerol\ {}^{m}\!/_{m} = \frac{\eta_m - 1.3195}{0.0016} \quad \text{(eq.1)}^{1}$$

Electrophoresis *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.31).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the characteristics prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological examination *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.12, 2.6.13).* Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

[1] Miner, Carl S.& Dalton, N.N: (ed.). *Glycerol*, American Chemical Society, Monograph Series, n^0 117. Reinhold Publishing Corp., New York 1953.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- the glycerol content of the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to macerate,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce glycerol macerates
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods
2.1.1 – 2.1.3
2.2.1 – 2.2.4

APC Method 3.3.1
Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.1 are prepared from 3 parts of fresh (frozen) matter of botanical or zoological origin and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 70–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

POTENTISATION
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
2 parts of water or 2 parts of a mixture of 74 parts of glycerol and 26 parts of water

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is produced from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of a mixture of 74 parts of glycerol and 26 parts of water

Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

APC Method 3.3.2
Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.2 are prepared from 1 part of dried plants or parts of plants, 2 parts of purified water and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of purified water is added to the starting material. Allow standing in a closed container for 6 hours. After that, the prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the mixture. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 75–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

APC Method 3.3.3
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.3.3 are prepared from killed or freshly slaughtered animals or parts thereof by maceration with glycerol as vehicle (glycerol macerates).

To produce the first decimal dilution (D1), disperse 1 part of finely minced animal material in 9 parts of glycerol (85 per cent), allow to macerate for at least 2 h, then succuss. Where justified, the addition of 1 part of glycerol (85 per cent) to 1 part of animal material before the mincing is accepted. Filter when necessary. In the case of very small amounts of animal material, it is allowed to prepare the 2nd or the 3rd decimal dilution by dispersing 1 part of finely minced animal material in 99 resp. 999 parts (= D2 resp. D3) of glycerol (85 per cent).

POTENTISATION
Where the mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø = D1), the 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is produced from:
1 part of the mother tincture (D1);
9 parts of glycerol (85 per cent) or ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is produced from:
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution;
9 parts of ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D3.

Where the mother tincture corresponds to the 2nd

or 3rd decimal dilution (Ø = D1), the 3rd or the 4th decimal dilution, respectively (D3 or D4) is produced from:
1 part of the mother tincture (D2 or D3)
9 parts of ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

DEFINITION
Liquid preparations prepared by maceration with oil are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) mostly by using arachis oil or olive oil.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted. When animal matter is used, lower animals are killed immediately before processing, the parts of warm-blooded animals being processed immediately after killing. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering, e.g. according to HAB H 5.2.4.The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

APC Method 3.4.1

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.4.1 are oil extracts for external use prepared from 1 part of lower animals and 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.) as follows:

After having killed the animals with CO_2, the animals are minced and mixed thoroughly with 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.). Protect the mixture from light. The extraction time should not exceed 8 hours. Then filter.

3.5. Mother tinctures made by percolation

DEFINITION
Mother tinctures made by percolation are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs.
The percolation is carried out at room temperature using ethanol of suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the herbal drug to be extracted to pieces of suitable size. Mix thoroughly with a portion of the prescribed extraction solvent and allow to stand for an appropriate time. Transfer to a percolator and allow the percolate to flow slowly making sure that the matter to be extracted is always covered with the remaining extraction solvent. The residue may be pressed out and the expressed liquid combined with the percolate.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another percolate of the herbal drug used for the preparation.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures made by percolation

Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371), Methods 1.1.8, 1.1.9
HAB Methods 4

APC Method 3.5.1 (related to Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 1.1.8)

Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.5.1 are prepared using the percolation methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from the equation given in Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 50 per cent (*V/V*) for subsequent dilutions from D4 onwards and proceed accordingly.

3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence / *deleted*

3.7. Fermented mother tinctures

DEFINITION
Fermented mother tinctures are aqueous preparations from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs prepared by fermentation at room temperature.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Add purified water according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent. Allow to stand at room temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph protected from air, from light and, if necessary, from oxidation. Hereafter express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out with purified water or by adding purified water to the residue and expressing again.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent

V/V of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce fermented mother tinctures

HAB Method 53
APC Methods 7.2.1, 7.2.3, 7.2.4

APC Method 3.7.1 (see also Compositions 7.2.1)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.7.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24 °C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5.
Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 96 per cent (*V/V*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture can together with another tincture of the same plant undergo a special pharmaceutical process leading to a composition according to method 7.2.1.

This procedure is followed for plants harvested in the summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in the winter. The mother tincture is produced by composing equal parts of the two tinctures.

POTENTISATION
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
7 parts of ethanol 36 per cent (*V/V*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations according to APC Method 3.7.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 3.7.1".

APC Method 3.7.2
Aqueous mother tinctures with heat treatment and fermentation WLA

Aqueous mother tinctures according to APC method 3.7.2 are aqueous preparations from fresh plants or plant parts prepared by macerating and fermentation according to the procedure described below.

A total of 1 part plant material and 1 part medium are mixed. The medium consists of 0.5 part purified water and 0.5 part whey (HAB).

In the morning comminute the herbal drug immediately after harvesting. Mix the plant material with equal parts of medium. Place the mixture in a water bath at 35-39°C. Place the mixture in the evening in an ice-water mixture at about 4°C for 2 hours and then place back in the water bath at approximately 37°C until the following day. The solution is mixed at the beginning and end of the cooling period.

The next three days, repeat the warm cold cycle as described above.

On the fifth day, press and filter the mixture. Usually, the filtrate is cloudy.

Incinerate a sufficient amount of the dried press residue in a porcelain or quartz crucible at a dark red glow. Immediately add approximately 5 mg of ash to every 100g of filtrate.

Store the liquid at room temperature for at least six months after the addition of the ash. Filter off any sediment that may have formed before further processing. The filtrate is the mother tincture.

POTENTISATION
The first decimal dilution D1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of purified water.
Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

The first centesimal dilution C1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
99 parts of purified water.
Subsequent centesimal dilutions are produced as stated for C1.

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.2 are further processed into parenterals according to regulation 11 or eye drops according to regulation 15, the last two dilutions in the preparation of decimal dilutions and the last dilution in the preparation of centesimal dilutions must be potentized with the specified medium (vehicle).

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.2 are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1) of the European Pharmacopoeia.

Tests
Tests include characters, identity, and purity tests. These include appearance (Ph.Eur. 2.2.2), odour (Ph.Eur. 2.3.4 or H 2.2.1), and pH (Ph.Eur. 2.2.3 or 2.2.4).

Storage
Store the mother tincture at 15°C to 25°C, in an airtight container, protected from light.

Designation
Preparations according to APC method 3.7.2 carry the designation "WLA"; the same applies to the preparations made from them.

APC Method 3.7.3
Aqueous mother tinctures with fermentation LA

Aqueous mother tinctures according to APC method 3.7.3 are aqueous preparations from fresh plants or plant parts prepared by macerating and fermentation according to the procedure described below. Unlike the WLA method, these preparations are manufactured without warm-cold cycles.

In the morning comminute the herbal drug immediately after harvesting. Mix 1 part of the plant material with 1 part of medium (purified water, whey (HAB), honey, lactose, finely powdered metal, or a combination thereof, as defined in the individual monograph).

Let the mixture stand at 15-25 C, stirring in the mornings and evenings. After five days press and filter the mixture. The filtrate is usually cloudy.

Incinerate a sufficient amount of the dried press residue in a porcelain or quartz crucible at a dark red glow. Immediately add approximately 5 mg of ash to every 100 g of filtrate.

Store the liquid at room temperature for at least six months after the addition of the ash. Filter, if necessary. The filtrate is the mother tincture.

Potentisation
The first decimal dilution D1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of purified water.
Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

The first centesimal dilution C1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
99 parts of purified water.
Subsequent centesimal dilutions are produced as stated for C1.

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.3 are further processed into parenterals according to regulation 11 or eye drops according to regulation 15, the last two dilutions in the preparation of decimal dilutions and the last dilution in the preparation of centesimal dilutions must be potentized with the specified medium (vehicle).

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.3 are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur.2.6.1).

Tests
Tests include characters, identity, and purity tests. These include appearance (Ph.Eur. 2.2.2), odour (Ph.Eur. 2.3.4 or H 2.2.1), and pH (Ph.Eur. 2.2.3 or 2.2.4).

Storage
Store the mother tincture at 15°C to 25°C, in an airtight container, protected from light.

Designation
Preparations according to APC method 3.7.3 carry the designation "LA"; the same applies to the preparations made from them.

APC Method 3.7.4
Aqueous mother tinctures with heat treatment and fermentation WA

Aqueous mother tinctures according to APC method 3.7.4 are preparations from fresh plants or plant parts

prepared by macerating and fermentation according to the procedure described below. Unlike the LA and WLA mother tinctures, the WA mother tincture is not stirred at the beginning and end of the cooling period.

The WA process allows for the use of varying quantities of fresh plant or plant parts as well as of excipients for the medium. The quantities to be used are shown in the tables 1 and 2 on the next page.

A total of 100 parts plant material and a sufficient amount of medium are prepared to yield a total of 100 parts plant extract.

Prepare the first portion in the morning from one portion of finely ground plant material and medium according to tables 1 and 2. Place the mixture in a water bath at 35-39°C. Place the mixture in the evening in an ice-water mixture at about 4°C for 2 hours and then place back in the water bath at approximately 37°C until the following day.

The next morning press the mixture. Mix the resulting liquid with another portion of finely ground plant material and medium as described in tables 1 and 2. Place the mixture back in a water bath at 35-39°C. Cool again in the evening as described on the first day.

Process the remaining two portions in the same manner over the next two days. On the fifth day, press and filter the mixture. Usually, the filtrate is cloudy.

Incinerate a sufficient amount of the dried press residue in a porcelain or quartz crucible at a dark red glow. Immediately add approximately 5 mg of ash to every 100 g of filtrate.

Store the liquid at room temperature for at least six months after the addition of the ash. Filter off any sediment that may have formed before further processing. The filtrate is the mother tincture.

Potentisation

The first decimal dilution D1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of purified water.
Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

The first centesimal dilution C1 is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
99 parts of purified water.
Subsequent centesimal dilutions are produced as stated for C1.

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.4 are further processed into parenteral preparations according to regulation 11 or eye drops according to regulation 15, the last two dilutions in the preparation of decimal dilutions and the last dilution in the preparation of centesimal dilutions must be potentized with the specified medium (vehicle).

If liquid dilutions according to APC method 3.7.4 are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1) of the European Pharmacopoeia.

Tests

Tests include characters, identity, and purity tests. These include appearance (Ph.Eur. 2.2.2), odour (Ph. Eur. 2.3.4 or H 2.2.1), and pH (Ph.Eur. 2.2.3 or 2.2.4).

Storage

Store the mother tincture at 15°C to 25°C, in an airtight container, protected from light.

Designation

Preparations according to APC method 3.7.4 carry the designation "WA" including the manufacturing variant and sub-variant (see table 1 and 2); the same applies to the preparations made from them.

Table 1: Daily quantities (plant and medium)

	Name of the manufacturing variant	Amount of freshly chopped plants or plant parts	Amount of medium (V) according to table 2	Amount of purified water
day 1	V1	25 parts	12,5 parts	
	V2	25 parts	25 parts	
	V3	25 parts	37,5 part	
	V4	25 parts	50 parts	
	V5	25 parts	75 parts	
day 2		25 parts		[100 parts – (Pressing of the plant parts from day 1)] / 3
day 3		25 parts		[100 parts – (Pressing of the plant parts from day 2)] / 2
day 4		25 parts		100 parts – (Pressing of the plant parts from day 3)
day 5		Pressing of the plant parts		

Table 2: Composition of the medium for day 1

Name of the manufacturing sub-variant	Amount of freshly chopped plants or plant parts	Amount of honey	Amount of whey (HAB)	Amount of purified water	Amount of lactose-monohydrate	Amount of hematite
a	25 parts			25 parts		
b1	25 parts		1/6 of the quantity V acc. to table 1	as much as necessary to reach the quantity V acc. to table 1		
b2	25 parts		2/9 of the quantity V acc. to table 1			
b3	25 parts		1/4 of the quantity V acc. to table 1			
b4	25 parts		1/3 of the quantity V acc. to table 1			
b5	25 parts		3/7 of the quantity V acc. to table 1			
b6	25 parts		1/2 of the quantity V acc. to table 1			
c	25 parts	1 part		25 parts	1 part	
d	25 parts		1/4 of the quantity V acc. to table 1	as much as necessary to reach the quantity V acc. to table 1		0.1 part

APC Method 3.7.5
Fermented aqueous mother tinctures L
Aqueous mother tinctures according to Method fermented aqueous mother tinctures L are produced by maceration and fermentation of fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.

Use one part of fresh plants with one part of purified water and mix.
In the morning mix one part of coarsely minced plant material with one part of purified water. Stand the uncovered mixture outside for one hour between 5.30 and 7.30 a.m. local (winter) time. In the evening stand the uncovered mixture outside for one hour between 5.30 to 7.30 p.m. local (winter) time.
During morning and evening mix to result in a homogeneous macerate.
Proceed accordingly for at least 7 weeks.
The macerate is filtered and pressed to separate out the plant material. Storage takes place between 8 and 15°C.

Tests

Tests include characters, identity, and purity tests. Typically, these include appearance (Ph.Eur. 2.2.2) and smell (Ph.Eur. 2.3.4 or H 2.2.1), pH (Ph.Eur. 2.2.3 or 2.2.4) and density (Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).

Criteria of exclusion are visible mould formation, pH > 6.5. Where, compared with previous batches, smells or colours are atypical.

Potentisation
The 1st decimal dilution D1 is made from
- 2 part of the mother tincture and
- 8 parts of purified water.

Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

The 1st centesimal dilution C1 is made from
- 2 part of the mother tincture and
- 98 parts of purified water.

Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

When fermented aqueous mother tinctures L are used to prepare parenteral preparations according to HAB Method 11 or eye drops according to HAB Method 15 the last decimal dilution must be potentized using the vehicle specified.

When liquid dilutions from fermented aqueous mother tinctures L are stored as intermediates, measures are taken to prevent contamination degradation and assure sterility.

Storage
Store in an airtight container, protected from light; in the case of the mother tincture cool at 8 to 15 °C. Measures to assure sterility have to be performed

Labelling /Recommended designation

Preparations according to fermented aqueous mother tinctures L are labelled "L".

3.8. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)

definition
Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion are liquids prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried plants or parts of plants by heat treatment usually at 37 °C and additional maceration. The digestion is carried out using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

production
If necessary, comminute the plant or parts of plants to be extracted. The quantity of extraction liquid is added according to the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly and warm to 35 – 39 °C. Then keep at 35 – 39 °C in a covered container. Allow to stand at this temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph, stirring occasionally. After cooling, allow to stand at room temperature in a well-closed container, protected from light for the time described in the individual monograph. Add ethanol of appropriate concentration if prescribed. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the digestion or with another digestion of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

identification
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

tests
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation

complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Digestio" or "ethanol. Digestio" if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) 1.2.1 – 6
Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) 1.4.1

APC Method 3.8.1
Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 are prepared from fresh plants with purified water as follows: Comminute the plants or parts of plants unless otherwise prescribed in the monograph. The amount of plants or parts of plants and purified water are defined by the monograph. Introduce the amount of purified water into a round-bottomed flask, place in a water bath and heat up to 48 – 52 °C. Add the plants or parts of plants whereby the flask should be a half to three quarters full, mix thoroughly. Close the flask hermetically. Keep the mixture at 48 – 52 °C for 6 hours. Allow to cool to 35 – 39 °C in the course of 20 – 24 hours and maintain this temperature for 64 – 72 hours with occasional stirring. Allow to cool. Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 which are prepared with purified water only, are generally processed immediately to solid preparations (see method 5.2 "Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or liquid extracts").

Digestion with temperature regulation and stabilization with ethanol
For digestion with temperature regulation and ethanolic stabilization (designated as ethanol. stab. Digestio) fresh plant material is mixed with water as the extraction liquid, warmed to 48 - 52 °C and kept at this temperature for 6 hours. Over the course of 20 to 24 hours the mixture is cooled to 35 - 39 °C and kept at this temperature for 72 hours. After cooling the expressed liquid is stabilized with a prescribed quantity of ethanol.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 carry the designation "Digestio APC 3.8.1". The same applies to preparations made from them. Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 with addition of ethanol carry the designation "ethanol. stab. digestio "

APC Method 3.8.2
Method 3.8.2 is used for fresh plants.
Mother tinctures prepared according to APC Method 3.8.2 are ethanolic digestions prepared by heat treatment with additional maceration as described below.
Comminute appropriately the plant or the parts of plants. To 1 part of the comminuted plant add 3.1 parts of ethanol 24 per cent *V/V*. Warm the mixture in a well-closed container to 37 ˚C and maintain this temperature for 1 h. Cool, allow to stand for not less than 10 days, stirring the mixture or swirling the container from time to time, then express the mixture and filter the resulting liquid. The filtrate is the mother tincture.

3.9. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion are prepared from adequately prepared dried plant material by adding boiling purified water. If ethanol (of the prescribed concentration) is used, the quantities of ethanol and purified water are added separately.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the plant material. Boiling purified water is used for extraction. If ethanol of suitable concentration is used, the quantity of ethanol is either used prior to extraction for moistening the dried plant material for the time prescribed or added to the mixture after cooling. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for the time prescribed. If only purified water is used as solvent, it is also used for moistening and to make up the final mass if prescribed. Express and filter, if necessary. If only purified water is used as solvent the preparation is processed further immediately.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia , or another limit is justified and authorised.
Sterility *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.1)*. Applicable only if the infusion is a stored aqueous preparation.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, if the tincture contains ethanol.
If aqueous tinctures made by infusion are stored they must meet the requirements of sterility *(*Ph.Eur. 2.6.1*)*.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Infusum" or "ethanol. Infusum", if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) 1.2.13
Ph. Eur.Hom. (2371) 1.4.4

APC Method 3.9.1 (related to Ph.Eur. Method 1.2.13)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.1 are prepared from dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of ethanol of the concentration, prescribed in the individual monograph as follows:
Add the amounts of ethanol and purified water required to obtain the prescribed ethanol concentration separately.
Unless a degree of comminution is specified in the monograph, comminute the herbal drug appropriately, add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss by evaporation and add the required amount of ethanol. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION
The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø = D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration as calculated for the mother tincture.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the ethanol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession – 50 – 36 – 18 per cent (*V/V*) until the 18 per cent level is reached.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.9.1 carry the designation "ethanol. stab. infusum". The same applies to preparations made from them.

APC Method 3.9.2 (related to HAB Method 20)
deleted

APC Method 3.9.3
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.3 are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of water or according to the individual monograph.
Comminute the starting material and add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION
The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø= D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of glycerol 85 % *(m/m)*.

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)

DEFINITION
Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants that have been allowed to boil with ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water. If ethanol is used, the quantities of water and ethanol can be added separately. If glycerol is used, the quantities of water and glycerol are added separately.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the plants or parts of plants, add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. Heat the mixture to boiling, if necessary under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature for the time prescribed, usually 30 min. After cooling allow to stand in a well-closed container protected from light at room temperature
for the time described in the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the decoction or with another decoction of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11).* Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the herbal substance used,
- where applicable, the fresh or dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Decoctum" or "ethanol. Decoctum", if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction

HAB Methods 12k, 12l, 12q
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) 1.2.7 – 12
Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) 1.4.2 – 3

APC Method 3.10.1 (related to Ph.Eur. Method 1.2.12)
APC Method 3.10.1. is used for dried herbal drugs. Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.10.1 are ethanolic decoction prepared by heat treatment with ethanol of an appropriate concentration as specified in the individual monograph with additional maceration as described below.
1 part of dried herbal drug is macerated with 20 parts of ethanol of the appropriate concentration (anhydrous,

96 per cent *V/V* – 94 per cent *m/m*,
90 per cent *V/V* – 86 per cent *m/m*,
80 per cent *V/V* – 73 per cent *m/m*,
70 per cent *V/V* – 62 per cent *m/m*,
50 per cent *V/V* – 43 per cent *m/m*,
36 per cent *V/V* – 30 per cent *m/m*,
18 per cent *V/V* – 15 per cent *m/m*),
unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.

Unless otherwise prescribed, comminute the herbal drug, mix thoroughly with the total amount of ethanol of the appropriate concentration and heat to boiling under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature for 30 min unless otherwise specified in the individual monograph. Cool or allow to cool and leave the mixture to stand in a closed container for 12 – 36 h. Separate the residue from the ethanol and, if necessary, press out. In the latter case, combine the 2 liquids obtained.
Adjust to the concentrations required in the individual monograph in accordance with Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 1.1.8.

POTENTISATION
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.
The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of a reduced concentration as given below.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the ethanol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession 96 – 90 – 80 – 70 – 50 – 36 – 18 per cent (*V/V*) until the 18 per cent level is reached.

3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment

DEFINITION
Viscous extracts with heat treatment are prepared from fresh or dried herbal drugs using a fatty or mineral oil or glycerol 85 % as extraction liquid with heat.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Ethanol 96 per cent *(V/V)* may be added to moisten the plant material. The prescribed quantity of the extraction liquid (mostly peanut, olive, sesame or sunflower oil, liquid paraffin, or glycerol 85 %) is added and mixed thoroughly with the herbal drug. The mixture is heated at the prescribed temperature and allowed to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time. Extraction temperature and time are prescribed in the individual monograph. Finally express and filter. If necessary, the empty space of the container is filled with a protecting gas.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation made with a vegetable oil complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-filled, airtight container, protected from light and heat. If necessary, the empty space in the container of oil extracts is filled with an inert gas.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- the extraction liquid used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- an indication of the extraction temperature,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce viscous extracts with heat treatment

HAB Methods 12 d-g
HAB Method 57

Individual Monographs:
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1.
Equisetum arvense, glycerol. decoctum (DER 1:2)

3.12. Preparations made by distillation (Distillates)

DEFINITION
Distillates are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants or dried plants, organic or inorganic substances by steam distillation or water-and-steam distillation. The distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the distillate. This process can be repeated several times in a rhythmic sequence of evaporation/condensation. Distillated preparations can be part of a more complex formulation that is composed by several fractions. Distillated preparations can be used as starting materials or finished products and can be potentised.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual

monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia or another limit is justified and authorised.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Distillates and derived dosage forms carry the designation „destillata".

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce preparations made by distillation

APC Method 3.12.1 Preparations made by ethanolic distillation (related to HAB Method 52)

Distillates according to APC method 3.12.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Comminute the plant material. Pour 8 parts of ethanol 90 per cent (*V/V*) over 100 parts of plant mass. Leave to stand in a closed container for at least 24 h, then steam distil, ending the steam distillation when 50 parts of distillate have been collected.

The mother tincture is made from
1 part of distillate and
1 part of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

POTENTISATION

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

APC Method 3.12.2 Preparations made by aqueous distillation

Distillates according to APC Method 3.12.2 are preparations of fresh or dried starting materials from mineral, vegetal and animal source, obtained by aqueous distillation.
Comminute the material. To 1 part of material add water according to the individual monograph, then heat with flame source, ending the distillation when 50 parts of distillated have been collected or according to the individual monograph.

The aqueous distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the final distillate.

3.13. Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold

DEFINITION

Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold are aqueous preparations from fresh or dried herbal drugs or saps from fresh herbal drugs, obtained by fermentation under cold and heat application.

PRODUCTION

Comminute the herbal drug appropriately. Add purified water. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent.
It is also possible to ferment the expressed plant sap or the finely minced fresh plant without addition of purified water. Treat rhythmically with application of heat (generally 37 °C) and cold (generally 4 °C). Where required, express and filter after the time prescribed in the individual monograph. Salts, specific plant ashes, metals or minerals may be added according to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, at 8 – 15 °C.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,

- where applicable, the name of the salt, metal or mineral added,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid (e.g. 1:2) or of starting material to preparation (e.g. DER 1:2).
- the designation „ferm" (with water and fermenting agents) or „Rh" (fermented plant sap without fermenting agents),
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold

Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1
Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.2
HAB Methods 33
HAB Methods 34
HAB Methods 35
HAB Method 36
HAB Methods 37
HAB Methods 51

APC Method 3.13.1 (related to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.1 are prepared from fresh plants generally yielding more than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting and express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm ("Rh") described below until fermentation is complete.
Each morning, warm the expressed liquid to 35 – 39 °C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain at this temperature. Each evening, cool the expressed liquid to 2 – 6 °C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain at this temperature.
Stir the liquid for 180 – 200 min during both temperature phases at the beginning, gradually decreasing to 10 min at the end of the fermentation process. During the phases in which the temperature is changed and the liquid being stirred, it is exposed to natural light. The rest of the time the liquid is left to stand in the dark.
If the pH prescribed in the individual monograph is not reached after 35 days, continue the fermentation process until the pH is reached (maximum 55 days).
Filter (nominal pore size not greater than 15µm) as soon as fermentation has ceased.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V)*.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED STORAGE CONDITIONS:
Store the mother tincture at 2°C to 15°C, in an airtight container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.13.1 carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*) is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

APC Method 3.13.2 (related to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.2)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.2 are prepared from fresh plants, generally yielding distinctly less than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting. Subject the plant material to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm ("Rh") for 7 – 14 days. Each morning, warm the plant material to approximately 35 – 39 °C and maintain at this temperature. Each evening, cool the plant material to 2 – 6 °C and maintain at this temperature.
Then express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm ("Rh") and the light exposure as described under method 3.13.1.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from

1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.
Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED STORAGE CONDITIONS:
Store the mother tincture at 2°C to 15°C, in an airtight container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.13.2 carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 18 per cent *(V/V)* is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT

Heat treatment can be applied directly to solid starting materials from botanical or zoological origin without addition of a vehicle. The heat treatment may be performed under presence or reduced presence of oxygen.
Solid starting materials obtained by heat include toasted preparations (Tosta), carbons (Carbones) and ashes (Cineres).

4.1. Toasted preparations – Tosta

DEFINITION
Toasted preparations are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or solid, dried animal matter by toasting. Toasted preparations are dry, usually brownish and have an intense and characteristic odour.

The substances to be toasted are crushed, if necessary, and are exposed to a heat source for the prescribed time. During the process water evaporates and the matter becomes brown or brownish. This is achieved through control of the heat supply, usually 170 – 250 °C and by tossing the material during this procedure. The toasted substance is powdered.
Particle size of the raw material and the endpoint of the toasting is prescribed in the individual monograph, e.g. as colour or as loss of weight. The toasted substance is powdered.

Toasted substances may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
According to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation "tostus/a/um/", example: Spongia tosta,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce toasted preparations.

According to the individual monograph.
Ph.Helv 17.7.4.1

4.2. Carbons – Carbones

DEFINITION
Carbons are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are dry, brittle, and generally black substances.
The plant or animal matter is heated to a temperature usually above 200 °C under reduced presence of oxygen to produce the carbonised deposit. The carbonised substance is powdered.
Carbons may be potentised according to Ph.Eur 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acidity or Alkalinity,
- Acid-soluble substances,
- Adsorption power,
- Alkali-soluble coloured matter,
- Cyanide,
- Ethanol-soluble substances,
- Fluorescent substances,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*,
- Sulfated ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.14)*,
- Sulfide,
- Total ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.16)*,
- Zinc.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation "Carbo", example: Carbo Gentianae,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce carbons

Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.2

4.3. Ashes – Cineres

DEFINITION
Ashes are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are generally fine, amorphous, white, grey, beige or brown powders.

The herbal or animal matter is incinerated generally at a temperature above 500 °C.

Ashes may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acid insoluble substances,
- Arsenic *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.2)*,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*.

ASSAY
Where applicable Cinis complies with the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container with a desiccant if necessary.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal substance used,
- the designation "Cinis", example: Cinis Tabaci,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce ashes

Ph. Helv. 17.7.4.3

5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE)

Solid preparations from plants are obtained either by drying fresh plants, plant juices or liquid extracts onto a vehicle.

5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants

DEFINITION
Solid preparations of fresh plants are prepared by drying fresh plant material onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.

PRODUCTION
Comminute the fresh plant material, and mix thoroughly with the vehicle in order to adsorb its liquid part. Dry the mixture gently and mill if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS
Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32):* The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4)*: (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use).

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from fresh plants

Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method
4.1.1

APC Method 5.1.1
Preparations according to APC Method 5.1.1 are solid preparations of fresh plants prepared by drying fresh herbal drugs onto lactose monohydrate.
Comminute the plants or parts of plants. To 1 part of the plant material add the required amount of lactose monohydrate, usually 2.9 parts unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly. Dry the moist mixture gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly.

POTENTISATION
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) Methods 4.1.1
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the solid preparation and
7 parts of lactose monohydrate

5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or liquid extracts

DEFINITION
Solid preparations of liquids are prepared by drying plant juices, tinctures, liquid extracts or solutions or their dilutions onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.
The expressed juice or the tincture from the fresh plant material or the solution is mixed thoroughly with the vehicle. The mixture is dried gently and milled if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS
Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32).* The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4).* (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use)

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw or starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from liquid extracts/ plant juices
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods (refer to potentisation)
4.1.1
4.1.2

APC Method 5.2.1
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.1 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
The quantity of lactose monohydrate added to 1 part of the expressed plant juice must always be such as to obtain 2 parts of dried granulate, taking the mass of the dry residue from the plant juice into consideration. Mix thoroughly and dry, until the granulate reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.2
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.2 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
The expressed plant juice of 1 part of the fresh plant is added to 3 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.3
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.3 are solid preparations from aqueous extracts prepared by

drying aqueous extracts of fresh plants onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
Mix 1 part of the comminuted fresh plants with 0.15 parts of purified water. Then express the mixture.
The expressed aqueous extract is added to 4 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate.
Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly.
Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the aqueous extract under reduced pressure.

6. LIQUID DILUTIONS

DEFINITION
Liquid dilutions are prepared by dissolving one or more starting materials in an appropriate vehicle. The liquid obtained may be directly potentised.

PRODUCTION
The starting material is dissolved in the appropriate vehicle. Dissolution may require heating or stirring. The separation of a residue may be necessary.

Where necessary, immediately after the dissolution the first potentisation step is carried out in accordance with the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
Liquid dilutions are identified using a suitable method.

TESTS
Appearance *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.1, 2.2.2)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits described in the individual monograph.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* Where applicable, the liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
Where applicable, liquid solutions of chemically defined starting materials are assayed.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the substance dissolved,
- the quantity dissolved,
- where applicable, the degree of potentisation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid dilutions

Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods
3.1.1
3.1.2
HAB Methods 5

7. COMPOSITIONS

In the production of anthroposophic preparations by composition, two or more starting materials and/or preparations, with or without excipients or vehicle, are transformed with anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention into a pharmaceutical preparation by one or more pharmaceutical processes. A composition is more than the sum of its components. The difference from a mixture is the anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention taking into account the healing need and the process we want to address.

7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials or preparations by one or more pharmaceutical processes are prepared by combining starting materials in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph using a specified process (e.g. specified mixing, heat treatment, chemical process).

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.1

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Anis-Pyrit, Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1), Ferrum-Quarz, Hepar-Magnesium, Hepar sulfuris, Kalium aceticum comp., Plumbum mellitum, Solutio Sacchari comp. (mineral compositions according to the model of a plant).

7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures of one plant by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION

Compositions made by treating two or more mother tinctures of one plant by pharmaceutical processes are prepared from extracts (mother tinctures) of the same plant species harvested at different seasons, i.e. at different stages of development. According to the individual monograph the extracts are combined in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process possibly using specific equipment. Adjustment of concentration, of pH, and of osmolality may be carried out.

PRODUCTION

According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.2

HAB Method 32

HAB Method 38

See appendix 2.6, for example Viscum album compositions.

APC Method 7.2.1 (see also APC Method 3.7.1)

Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.1 are produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure:
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24 °C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 96 per cent (*V/V*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture is stored until it will undergo another pharmaceutical process with a second tincture of the same plant.
This procedure is followed for plants harvested in summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in winter.
The mother tincture is a composition, produced by unifying equal parts of the two tinctures.

The mother tincture can be potentised as follows:

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the mother tincture and
7 parts of ethanol 36 per cent (*V/V*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations according to APC Method 7.2.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 7.2.1".

APC Method 7.2.2 Compositions of aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof

Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.2 are mother tinctures produced from fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.
The plants or parts of plants are comminuted in a grinder, pressed in appropriate boxes and frozen at – 10 °C to – 30 °C. The plants or parts of plants are combined to a specific formulation: Plants and parts of plants from winter harvest with plants from spring harvest to give the so called winter formulation. Plants from summer harvest with plants from autumn harvest to give the so called summer formulation.
5 parts of frozen plants are extracted for 1 – 4 h at 10 – 20 °C with 95 parts of 0.09 % sodium chloride

solution in a container with stirring. The coarse plants or plant parts are separated by centrifugation. The centrifugate is filled up to 100 parts with 0.09 percent sodium chloride solution and filtered. The winter formulation produces the so called winter extract, the summer formulation the so called summer extract. If the extract is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.
The composition is produced by composing three parts of winter extract and one part of summer extract as described below.
The winter extract is stirred in a specially constructed gilded mixing vessel. The summer extract is allowed to drop from the top of the vessel into the vortex of the winter extract. The osmolality is adjusted by adding sodium chloride and the pH is adjusted to 6.1 – 6.3 by adding sodium hydroxide solution. If the composition is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place. The composition (mother tincture) can be used directly or can be used for further dilutions. The addition of antioxidants or substances for pH adjustment is allowed.

Dilutions are obtained by diluting the composition. At a temperature between 10 °C and 25 °C the necessary amount of 0.9 percent sodium chloride solution is stirred in a vessel; the composition is dropped from the top into the vortex. The dilution series is: (Composition + sodium chloride solution) e.g. 3+2 (30 mg), 2+3 (20 mg), 1+4 (10 mg), 1+9 (5 mg), 1+49 (1mg), 1+499 (0.1 mg); 1+4999 (0.01 mg). If the dilution is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL/2 mL of the final preparation.

APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 Compositions of fermented aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof

Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 are mother tinctures produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1.318 parts of purified water, 0.03 parts of sucrose, and 0.002 parts of a Lactobacillus plantarum suspension, 10^9 – 10^{10} cfu/mL and mix thoroughly. Leave to ferment for 3 days at 20 to 27 °C with the exclusion of air. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. If (except for the berries) gentle pressure applied to the plant residue does not achieve a final mass of extract equal to 2 parts, pour a sufficient amount of purified water over the plant residue and express gently. Use the resulting extract to make the extract up to 2 parts. If prescribed in the individual monograph, adjust the pH to 5.0 – 6.5 by adding sodium hydroxide.
Follow the same procedure for plant material harvested in the summer and for plant material of the same species, harvested in the winter. However, for the winter harvest, process the berries and the other plant parts separately according to the method described above and use 1.328 parts of purified water and 0.02 parts of sucrose. Also, leave the berry mixture to ferment for 4 days.
If the extracts are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).

The composition is produced by composing equal parts of the summer and the combined winter extracts as described below.

Method 7.2.3
Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections.
Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with 3 parts of water for injections.

Method 7.2.4
Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections. Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with a mixture of 0.002 parts of a metal salt trituration from the D4 potentisation step and 2.998 parts of water for injections.

Methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4
Feed the mixture of the winter extracts continuously onto the centre of a rotating disk. At the same time, feed the summer extracts continuously onto the slightly raised edge of the disk. The blended mixture flows continually off over the edge of the disk. Filter the mixture; the filtrate is the mother tincture. If the mother tincture is stored for further processing, it must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).
The dilution series is (composition or dilution + water for injections): 1+9 (20 mg), 1+19 (10 mg, corresponding to a 1:20 dilution); 1+39 (5 mg); 1 + 99 (2 mg);
1 part 1:20 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200 or 1 mg); 1 part 1:200 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:2,000 or 0.1 mg); 1 part 1:2,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:20,000 or 0.01 mg); 1 part 1:20,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200,000 or 0.001 mg); 1 part 1:200,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (0.0001 mg). To prepare the final preparation, add sodium chloride to the water for injections to obtain an isotonic solution.

Compositions produced according to methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 may be potentised according to chapter 8.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL of the final preparation.

STORAGE
Store the mother tincture in a well-closed container at 2 – 8 °C.

7.3. Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures are obtained by combining one or more starting materials with one or more stocks in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.3

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Cissus-Ossa.

7.4. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Composition made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by pharmaceutical processes are prepared according to an individual monograph prescribing the combination of the ingredients in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process using specific equipment.

PRODUCTION
According to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the preparation,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.4

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Onopordum acanthium, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1 – 2 % Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø, see also Plantago lanceolata and Primula.

7.5. Compositions made by co-potentising

DEFINITION
Compositions made by co-potentising are prepared from two or more starting materials and/or preparations (e.g. mother tinctures, potencies) by co-potentising over one or more steps.

PRODUCTION
According to APC Method 8.1 or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name, quantity and potency degree of each ingredient,
- how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.5

Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods
5.1.1
5.1.2
5.1.5

7.6. Compositions including the dosage form and its excipients

Definition
Compositions including the dosage form and its excipients are made by preparing two or more starting materials and excipients with anthroposophic pharmaceutical intention.

Production
According to the individual monograph

Identification/Tests
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

Recommended Designation
Non-proprietary name of the medicinal product

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.6

Examples (see appendix 2.6).
Plantago comp.
Rosae aetheroleum / Silicea colloidalis comp.

8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS

Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid or semi-solid potencies) has been carried out for a defined time. The potentising time differs for different vehicles (e.g. solids and liquids). The preparations are defined by the time of the potentising process, the kind of movement, the medium (vehicle), the ratio between the vehicle and the active substance to be potentised as well as the number of potentising steps.

The potentising ratio is usually:
1 part of substance
9 parts of vehicle.

The potentising ratio for co-potentised preparations is usually:
1 part of a mixture of equal parts of active substances
9 parts of vehicle.

This ratio is used for producing the so-called D (for decem, ten) potencies, who are the most common in Anthroposophic Medicine and Pharmacy. Therefore, the APC methods are describing only the preparation of the D potencies, which in fact in some countries are named X (e.g., UK and USA and other countries, where the HPUS is used as reference) or DH. A preparation, which has undergone 3 steps, can in different countries be named D3, 3X or DH3.

However, other ratios are used in homoeopathy as well as to some extent in Anthroposophic Medicine regarding different traditions in the different countries. Hahnemann introduced the centesimal scale and later the LM scale in his "Organon", but also the decimal scale was used in Hahnemann's time. In the Ph.Eur. both, D and C potencies, are listed for all methods from the German and French homoeopathic tradition and for a few other methods.

The potentising ratio for the C potencies is
1 part of substance
99 parts of vehicle

The method 38 of the GHP prescribes, and method 33d describes among others so-called vicesimal dilutions, which are used in Anthroposophic Medicine.

The potentising ratio is
1 part of substance
19 parts of vehicle

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations

HAB Methods 10, 11, 12j, 15

The potentising specifications in Ph.Eur. monograph 2371 of Methods 1.1.1 – 1.1.11, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 – 2.2.4 and 5.1.1 – 5.1.5.

The potentising specifications in HAB methods 5, 11, 15, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53.

The potentising specifications in APC Methods.

8.1. Co-potentised preparations

definition
Method 8.1 is used for preparing dilutions by co-potentising two or more stocks and/or dilutions thereof, where co-potentisation consists of mixing several stocks or dilutions of stocks then potentising them together in one or more potentisation steps.

production
Co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1 may be prepared from stocks and/or solutions, potentised preparations and mother tinctures whose

method of production is specified by a ratio of 1 part of starting material and 10 parts of extraction solvent. When a solid potency D4 shall be potentised with liquids, it can be potentised one step according to Ph.Eur. Hom. (2371) Methods 3.2, and then be used as D5 for co-potentisation or dilution to a final concentration of 1 ppm.

Co-potentised compositions may be used to produce all types of dosage forms. Co-potentisation of mixtures according to APC Method 8.1 to produce parenteral preparations or eye drops is carried out with water for injections or an isotonic solution as diluting agent.

IDENTIFICATION, TEST, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- where applicable, the ethanol content,
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree, example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods 5.1.1-5

APC Method 8.1.1 (Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Method 5.1.5)
Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.1 are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1 part of the final 10 parts. Consequently the vehicle is 10 minus n parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1 part of each of the n preparations with 10 minus n parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.1 and derived dosage forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole adding the expressions "rhythmically diluted".

APC Method 8.1.2 (related to Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods 5.1.1 and 5.1.2)

Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.2 are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1/n part of the final 10 parts. The vehicle makes up 9 parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1/n part of each of the n preparations with 9 parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.2 and derived dosage forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole.

8.2. Semi-solid potencies

DEFINITION
Semi-solid potencies are potencies of liquid or solid substances potentised with a semi-solid vehicle

PRODUCTION
Semi-solid potencies are prepared by successive dilution of a liquid or a solid substance to be potentised with a semi-solid vehicle in the prescribed ratio by hand, e.g. in a mortar with a pestle, or in a suitable machine, in the case of solid substances a machine allowing the requirements for particle size to be met.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree in the ointment,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

APC Method 8.2.1 Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials (related to HAB Method 48)
Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials are produced with 1 part of a powdered metal, powdered

mineral or a composition containing minerals and 9 parts of an ointment basis, leading to a homogeneous ointment. The resulting particle size of the solid starting material does not exceed 100 µm.
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 can be used further to produce ointments according to HAB Method 13.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 carry the designation "APC M D1".

APC Method 8.2.2 Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions
Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions are produced with 1 part of a decimal solid or liquid dilution (Dn) and 9 parts of an ointment basis leading to a homogeneous ointment. The resulting decimal dilution degree is (Dn+1).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2 must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.2.2.

8.3. Solid potencies

DEFINITION
Solid potencies are potencies of solid, usually insoluble substances potentised with a solid vehicle.

PRODUCTION
Potencies of solid substances are prepared by successive trituration of the substance to be potentised usually with lactose monohydrate in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate trituration machine. Solid potencies can be further potentised in liquid phase, if they are soluble in a vehicle.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations according to APC Method 8.3 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.3.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods 4.1.1-2
4.2.1-2

APC Method 8.3.1. Mechanical triturations
DEFINITION
Preparations according to APC method 8.3.1 are triturations of solid substances with lactose monohydrate in a ratio of 1:10 prepared in a specified (closed) machine.

PRODUCTION
Triturate using a machine that ensures even trituration and comminution of substance and vehicle. Suitable machines include mixers with rhythmic, pulsating spatial inversion (e.g. "Turbula"), in combination with a sealable mixing vessel and appropriate grinding balls as well as other machines with rotating movements such as the ball mill. Triturate 1 part of the substance to be potentised with 9 parts of vehicle. The trituration time depends on the machine and on the chosen parameters. Trituration must be carried out for between 15 and 60 minutes. It has to be ensured, that the trituration is homogeneous and that a particle size reduction of the substance is achieved.

8.4. Liquid potencies

DEFINITION
Liquid potencies are potencies of liquid or soluble solid substances potentised with a liquid vehicle.

PRODUCTION
The substance or mixture to be potentised is dissolved in the vehicle in the chosen ratio. Usual vehicles for liquid potencies are water (purified water or water for injections), ethanol of various concentrations, sugar syrup (Ph.Eur. (2786)), glycerol or vegetable oils. Excipients might be necessary, for example to emulsify an aqueous substance into oil. After dissolution, rhythmic succussion is carried out, making different movements, e.g. a vertical whirl or a horizontal succussion. It is also possible to differentiate the time of succussion, e.g. depending on the origin of the starting material. For the second potentising step (D2) one part of the first potency or of the co-potentised potencies and the prescribed amount of vehicle are brought together and succussed. Further potentising is carried out as stated for D2.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY
Tests are carried out according to the individual monograph.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations
Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) Methods 3.2.1 – 3

9. MIXTURES

DEFINITION

Mixtures are produced from usually two or more active substances.Vehicles and/or excipients may be added. Mixtures contain the sum of the active substances mixed together. Mixtures can also be produced from one active substance and a vehicle. A special manufacturing method is not needed (cf. compositions). Mixtures are used to facilitate the administration of more than one active substance in one single finished product. The mixture itself may be the final dosage form.

Mixtures can be classified into four categories:
9.1. Mixtures of preparations without a vehicle
9.1a. Mixtures of liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1b. Mixtures of solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation.
9.2. Mixtures of preparations with a vehicle
9.2a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2b. Solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation, in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.3. Mixtures of preparations with excipients and vehicles.
9.3a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.3b. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.4. Mixtures of starting materials used as active substances and mother tinctures or preparations with or without vehicles and/or excipients.

RECOMMENDED LABELLING

- the ingredients mixed and their quantity,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mixtures
HAB Method 12
HAB Method 16

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIB

Starting materials and preparations

PART IIB **66**

Starting materials and preparations **66**

CYDONIA, FRUIT 67

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, HEAT TREATED AQUEOUS TINCTURE 1:2.1 67

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, GLYCEROL EXTRACT WITH HEAT TREATMENT 1:2.1 68

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, MOTHER TINCTURE OBTAINED BY RHYTHMIC APPLICATION OF HEAT AND COLD CYDONIA OBLONGA E FRUCTIBUS FERM 33B 69

LEVICO WATER 70

VISCUM ALBUM 72

MOTHER TINCTURES AND EXTRACTS 76

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH ONE-YEAR SHOOTS, BUFFERED AQUEOUS EXTRACT, 1:50 76

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:20 78

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, FERMENTED AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:5 80

VISCUM ALBUM L., WHOLE DRIED PLANTS, COLD-TREATED AQUEOUS MOTHER TINCTURE K 82

CYDONIA, FRUIT

Cydonia oblonga, Fructus

DEFINITION

Fresh, ripe fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill.

CHARACTERS

The odour is characterised by a typical flowery scent.

IDENTIFICATION

The pear-shaped variety (*var. pyriformis*) is yellow, fragrant, fuzzy, 7 – 15 cm in diameter. The gentle soft pulp is golden yellow.

The apple-shaped variety (*var. maliformis*) is yellow to greenish yellow, fuzzy, 7-15 cm in diameter and less fragrant. The pulp is characterised by stone cells.

Both varieties obtain five oblong-ovate sepals with serrate margins which are located in a depression. They are completely adnate with the 5 carpels. The 5 loculi of the core generally each contain 5 to 15 or sometimes more brown, cuneate seeds arranged in 2 vertical rows and stuck together with a mucilaginous coat.

TESTS

Foreign matter (*Ph.Eur. 2.8.2*):
Maximum 5 per cent (m/m).
If the whole batch is checked during harvest / manufacture and foreign matter is sorted out, no test has to be done.

Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*:
Minimum 65 per cent (m/m).
In accordance with Ph. Eur. "Herbal drugs for homoeopathic preparations" (2045) the test is carried out if a fresh plant is processed more than 24 h after harvesting.

Other species:
The presence of fruits of 4 to 5 cm in diameter with a smooth peel and being devoid of stone cells indicate the adulteration with Japanese quince [*Choenomeles japonica* (Thunb.) Lindl. ex Spach, syn. *Cydonia japonica* Pers., Rosaceae] or Chinese quince [*Choenomeles speciosa* (Sweet) Nakai, Rosaceae].

MOTHER TINCTURES AND EXTRACTS

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, HEAT TREATED AQUEOUS TINCTURE 1:2.1

DEFINITION

The heat treated aqueous tincture is prepared from the freshly cut fruits of *Cydonia oblonga Mill.*

PRODUCTION

The *heat-treated aqueous tincture* is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to purified water 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70 °C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit are cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of purified water and mix thoroughly. Heat to 65 – 70 °C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45 °C separate by straining the mixture through gauze, filter the resulting liquid and process immediately.
A filtration step and an additional heat treatment may be performed to meet microbiological requirements.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: light yellow to light brownish, clear to opalescent turbid liquid.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography or high performance thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. Apply 10 mL onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel RH (360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol R and 10 mL of water R. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water R. Elute with 10 mL of methanol R. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 1 mL of methanol R.

Reference solutions. Dissolve 10 mg of rutin R, 10 mg of hyperoside R and 2 mg of scopoletin R in 10 mL of methanol R each.

Plate: TLC-plate with silica gel R (5-40 µm) [or HPTLC-plate with silica gel R (2-10 µm)]

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid R, water R, ethyl acetate R (15:15:70 V/V/V).

Application: 10 µL [or 7 µL] test solution, 5 µL [or 2 µL] rutin reference solution, 5 µL [or 2 µL] hyperosid reference solution and 25 µL [or 2µL] scopoletin reference solution as bands 20mm [or 10 mm]

Development: over a path of 10 cm [or 6 cm].

Drying: at 100 - 105 °C for 5 to 10 min.

Detection: spray the warm plate with natural product reagent spray solution R (1 g of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester R in 100 mL of methanol R), then with macrogol 400 spray solution R (5 g of macrogol

400 R in 100 mL of methanol R). Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone
	A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.002 to 1.022.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.0 to 4.0.
Dry residue *(HAB 2.2.6)*: min. 2.0 per cent (m/m), determined on 3.00 g and drying for 2 hours at 100 to 105 °C.

STORAGE
Store not above 25 °C in well closed containers, protected from light.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, GLYCEROL EXTRACT WITH HEAT TREATMENT 1:2.1

DEFINITION
The glycerol extract with heat treatment is prepared from the fresh cut fruit of *Cydonia oblonga Mill.*

PRODUCTION
The *glycerol extract with heat treatment* is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to glycerol (85 per cent) 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70 °C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit is cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of glycerol (85 per cent) and mix thoroughly. Heat to 60 – 70 °C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45 °C separate the mixture by straining through gauze, then filter if necessary.

CHARACTERS
Appearance: light yellow, slightly turbid, viscous liquid.
Odour: fruity.

IDENTIFICATION
Thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. To 5 mL add 15 mL of water R. Apply the mixture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel RH (particle size 55 – 110 µm, 360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol R and 10 mL of water R. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water R. Elute with 10 mL of methanol R. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol R.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of rutin R, 10 mg of hyperoside R and 2 mg of scopoletin R in 10 mL of methanol R.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate R.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid R, water R, ethylacetate R (15:15:70 V/V/V).

Application: 20 µL as bands.

Development: over a path of 10 cm.

Drying: at 105 °C for 5 min.

Detection: spray the warm plate with natural product reagent spray solution R (1 g of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester R in 100 mL of methanol R), then with macrogol 400 spray solution R (5 g of macrogol 400 R in 100 mL of methanol R). Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.170 to 1.185.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.5 to 5.0.

STORAGE

Protected from light at 2 and 8 °C.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, MOTHER TINCTURE OBTAINED BY RHYTHMIC APPLICATION OF HEAT AND COLD CYDONIA OBLONGA E FRUCTIBUS FERM 33B

DEFINITION

The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared from the fresh minced fruit of *Cydonia oblonga Mill.*

PRODUCTION

The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared according to HAB method 33b (APC method 3.13).

CHARACTERS

Appearance: slightly yellow liquid.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography or high performance thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. Apply 2 mL of the tincture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel RH (sorbens mass 500 mg, 3 mL reservoir) preconditioned sequentially with 2 mL of methanol R and 2 mL of water R. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water R. Elute with 10 mL of ether R. The eluate is evaporated to dryness. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol R.

Reference solutions. Dissolve 10 mg of caffeic acid R and 10 mg of hyperoside R in 10 mL of methanol R each Dilute 500 µL of the caffeic acid R solution (1 mg/mL) to 10 mL with methanol R.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate R (5-40 µm) [or HPTLC-plate with silica gel F_{254} R (2-10 µm)].

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid R, water R, ethyl acetate R (10:10:80 V/V/V).

Application: 60 µL [or 12 µL] of test solution and 10 µL [or 2 µL] of reference solution, as bands.

Development: over a path of 8 cm [or 6 cm].

Drying: in air.

Detection: Spray with natural product reagent spray solution R (1 g of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester R in 100 mL of methanol R), then with macrogol 400 spray solution R (5 g of macrogol 400 R in 100 mL of methanol R). Allow to dry in air for about 30 min and examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm.

Results: See below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Caffeic acid: a light blue zone	A light blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange yellow zone	A light blue zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.004 to 1.030.
Dry residue *(based on Ph.Eur. 2.8.16)*: minimum 1.0 per cent (m/m), determined on 1.000 g of mother tincture by drying for 4 to 5 hours at 105 °C.
pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 3.0 to 4.2.

STORAGE

Protected from light, store between 8 and 15 °C.

LEVICO WATER

Aqua Levici
Levico

DEFINITION

Naturally occurring spring water from the source Levico (Italy).
Content:
- *Arsenic*: 4 – 10 ppm
- *Iron*: 1000 – 2800 ppm

CHARACTERS

Appearance: colourless to yellowish-brown liquid, usually clear, a slight sediment may occur.
Odour: almost odourless.

IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification of arsenic by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.

B. Identification of iron by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.

C. Identification of copper by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).

Test solution. To 1.0 mL add 0.200 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 10.0 mL with water *R*.

Reference solution. Prepare the reference solutions (0.5, 1.0, 2.0 and 4.0 ppm Cu) using copper standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available copper standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.

Source: copper hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.5 nm.
Wavelength: 324.8 nm.

Flame: air-acetylene.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.
D. To 0.5 mL add 4.5 mL of water *R*. The solution gives reaction a on sulfates (*Ph.Eur. 2.3.1*).

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.004 to 1.015.
pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 1.5 to 2.5.

ASSAY

Arsenic: 4 to 10 ppm
Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).

Test solution. To 0.200 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.

Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppb As) using arsenic standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available arsenic standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.

Source: arsenic hollow-cathode lamp using a trans-miss$ion band preferably of 0.5 nm.
Wavelength: 193.7 nm.

Atomisation device: graphite furnace.
Calculate the content of arsenic in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \left(\frac{A_1 \cdot F_1}{F_2}\right) / 1000$$

A_1: measured concentration of arsenic in µg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.200 mL

Iron: 1000 ppm to 2800 ppm.
Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).

Test solution. To 0.500 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.

Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppm Fe) using iron standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available iron standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.

Source: iron hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.2 nm.

Wavelength: 372.0 nm.

Flame: air-acetylene.

Calculate the content of iron in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \frac{A_2 \cdot F_1}{F_2}$$

A_2: measured concentration of iron in mg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.500 mL

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

PREPARATIONS

According to Ph.Eur., monograph 2371 Methods 3.1.1, 3.1.2.

VISCUM ALBUM
Mistletoe

DEFINITION
Fresh whole plants or parts of *Viscum album* L. are harvested from female and male plants at defined seasons from botanically identified host tree species.

The parts of plants described under Identification can be used singularly or in combination (see e.g. list entries in APC Appendix 2.2. on *Viscum album*).

Harvest times according to seasonal development stages and harvested plant organs

Summer harvest
in the weeks before, around and after summer solstice; from male and female plants: fully grown one year old shoots, or two year old shoots including green fruits, or several year old shoots plus sinker including host wood, female plants including green berries.

Winter harvest
in the weeks before, around and after winter solstice; from male and female plants: one year old shoots, or two year old shoots including flower buds and berries (also separately harvested), or several year old shoots plus sinker including host wood, female plants including flower buds and berries.

Additional harvest times
late winter/early spring: from male and female plants; two year old shoots including blossoming flowers; around autumn equinox: from male and female plants; two year old shoots including green fruits and resting flower buds.

IDENTIFICATION
Viscum album L. is a dioecious, semi-parasitic shrub, growing as epiphyte on a wide range of deciduous trees (V. a. ssp. album) and on coniferous trees as fir (V. a. ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch.) and pine (V. a. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.).

Typical shoots of *Viscum album* L. consist of a main stem with an elongated internode and two opposite leaves expanding from the terminal node, and a compressed generative shoot with three flower buds, from which the fruits are formed (Fig. 1).

Stems
The stems are round in cross section or slightly laterally compressed, thickened at the bottom and the terminal node. Depending on host tree species, age and nutrient status, the stems are in average 80 mm (35 up to 150 mm) long and in average have a diameter of 4 mm (2 up to 20 mm); they are glabrous, smooth, and mainly dark green (V.a. ssp. album, V.a. ssp. abietis), on pine trees often slightly yellowish green (V.a. ssp. austriacum).

Branching
Shoots of V. album exhibit a multiple dichasial branching (Fig. 1): two main shoots originate from the axillae of the opposite leaves; four additional shoots grow from the axillae of paired scale leaves at the bottom of each of these stems; lateral shoots can be elongated as vegetative shoots with two leaves or can be strongly compressed like generative short shoots without leaves or can show intermediate morphological features.

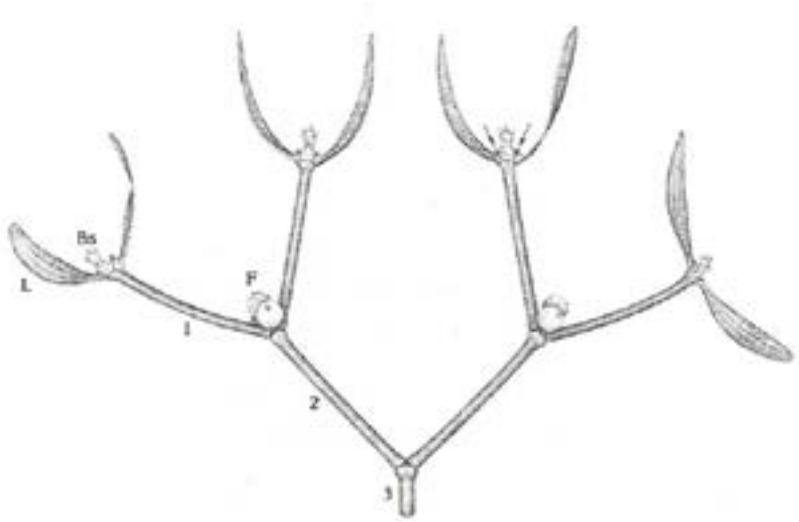


Fig. 1: Fork sprouts of female *Viscum album* L., covering the growth of three years: 1 = shoot of present year, 2 = shoot of last year, 3 = terminal end of three-year-old shoot). L = leaf, F = fruit, Bs = flowering generative short shoot; arrows = compressed fork sprouts, unfolding next year. (From: Göbel T: Erdengeist und Landschaftsseele. Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach 1994; p. 225.)

Leaves
The entire leaves are stalkless and originate in pairs from each stem's terminal node, but rarely can grow also as whorl of three or more; they unfold bright green in spring, turn dark green in late summer and especially on male bushes appear yellowish green while blossoming in winter; they expand in length, width and thickness until the summer of the second season and usually fall off fully turgescent and green during late summer, but on some host trees can persist through a third or fourth growth season; they are glabrous, with almost equal upper and lower surfaces; five veins run parallel to the margin and are more prominent on the lower surface; the form of the leaves is elongated-obovate to ligulate wide with a relatively stable length-/width-ratio within the subspecies; while absolute length (40 to 150 mm) and width (4 to 30 mm) can vary depending on subspecies, age and nutrition status of the plant, they are in general

- three to four times longer than wide and linear-lanceolate for V.a. ssp. album
- four to fiv times longer than wide, linear-lanceolate and slightly yellowish green for V.a. ssp. austriacum
- less than three times longer than wide and obtuse, narrowing at the base for V.a. ssp. abietis.

Generative Short Shoots
Generative shoots are yellowish green and short (up to 7 mm long). From late summer or early autumn on they emerge between the unfolded leaf pair and exhibit one (rarely two) opposite pair(s) of buds plus a single terminal bud. The buds are of slightly flattened conical shape and three to six times bigger on male than on female plants. They are carried by greenish yellow, scale-like compressed, relatively thick bracts; on female plants the bracts show reddish hairs, while the terminal male bud has no bracts (Fig. 2).

Flowers
The inconspicuous flowers are unisexual and on male as well as on female plants show a simple perianth (perigone) with usually four tepals. The tepals of male flowers are yellowish-green and inwardly fused with the stamina (Fig. 2); these are melted as cushions and set relative large, sticky yellowish pollen grains free. After blossoming the male flowers fall off.

Female flowers are smaller, the perigone showing normally four, but rarely also three, five or six tepals (Fig. 2); the perigone comprises a pad-shaped, sticky stigma of yellow-reddish colour that during the blossoming period secrets a sweet nectar.

Depending on temperature, blossoming can begin after the winter solstice, but normally occurs in the middle of the period between winter solstice and vernal equinox, often lasting for two or three weeks; after long and cold winters it may be delayed until after the vernal equinox. Pollination occurs mainly by winter-active insects, only rarely by wind.

Fruits
The berry-like pseudocarps originate from female flowers and after pollination continuously swell from early spring until late autumn. Initially tube-like elongated, the green fruits develop a spherical shape with a diameter of 7 to 12 mm and turn yellowish to glassy white from the middle of autumn on. If not eaten by mistletoe-digesting birds, the fruits stay fully turgid and vital during winter until the end of spring in the subsequent year. Main shoots generate regularly three, rarely up to five fruits. Associated lateral shoots with strongly compressed and leafless stems can generate clusters of up to 12 (= 4 x 3) fruits at the respective node.

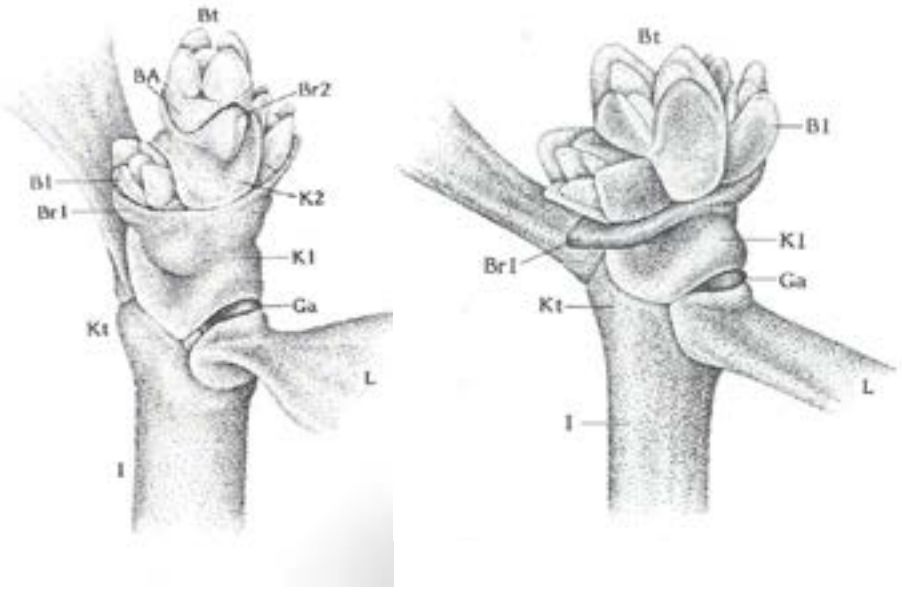


Fig. 2: Typical generative shoots of female (left) and male (right) *Viscum album* L.: I = internodium, L = leaf, Ga = compressed fork sprout, unfolding next year, Kt = terminal node, L = leaf, K1 = basal node of generative shoot, K2 = terminal node of generative shoot, Br1 = bract of basal node, Br2 = bract of terminal node, BA = axis of flower stem, B1 = basal flower, Bt = terminal flower. (From: Göbel T: Erdengeist und Landschaftsseele. Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach 1994; pp. 228ff.)

Remnants of the usually tetramerous perianth and of the stigma mark the top of the fruits as dark margins. The transparent exocarp is leathery dense, the mesocarp is transparent, stringy and mucilaginous and encloses usually one green seed (Fig. 3).

Remnants of the usually tetramerous perianth and of the stigma mark the top of the fruits as dark margins. The transparent exocarp is leathery dense, the mesocarp is transparent, stringy and mucilaginous and encloses usually one green seed (Fig. 3).

Seeds

The seeds consist of the green endosperm that is enclosed by a hard endocarp; they are oval-scutiform, heart-like formed or three-sided, depending on the number of embryos. They contain

- on V.a. ssp. album usually two, occasionally one, rarely three or very rarely more embryos and are connected with the peripheral layer of the mesocarp by filaments;
- on V.a. ssp. abietis and V.a. ssp. austriacum usually one, only rarely two embryo/s; filaments are missing.

Embryos

Embryos are terete and appear dark green. They consist of the radicle, which in spring extends beyond the endosperm, a fairly thick dark green hypocotyl, and the plumule, which is resting between two yellowish cotyledons that are embedded in the endosperm (Fig. 3).

Haustorium

Viscum album is connected to the host by a haustorium that develops from the radicle of the embryo and is embedded into the tree's secondary xylem (wood) by a cone-shaped primary and several secondary sinkers. Young sinker parenchyma stays green and vital for weeks or months, while mature sinker parenchyma turns yellowish, but stays less lignified (hard) than the surrounding wood of the tree. Green cortical strands emerge from the stem of the haustorium and with respect to the branch's axis grow orthogonally or longitudinally through the inner layers of the host's bark; they can generate secondary sinkers whenever they come in contact with the host's cambium (Fig. 4).

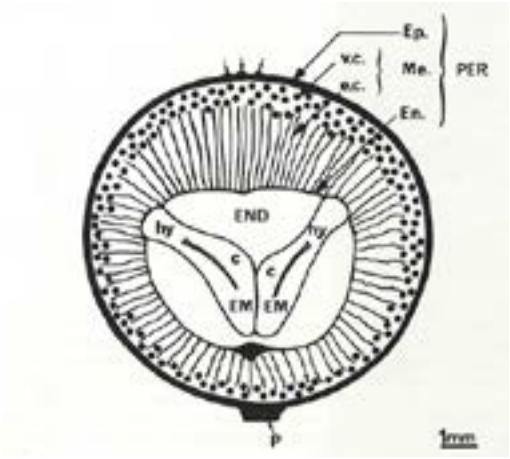


Fig. 3: Mature fruit of *Viscum album* L., carried by the peduncule (P), showing two embryos (EM), each with a hypocotyl (hy) and two cotyledons (c), embedded into the endosperm (END), which is encased by the endocarp (En.) and embedded in the pericarp (PER), that consists of mesocarp (Me.) with inner elongated cells (e.c.) and outer vacuolated cells (v.c.) and the epicarp (Ep.). (From: Sallé G, Germination and establishment of *Viscum album* L. In: Calder M., Bernhardt P. (eds), The Biology of Mistletoes. Academic press, London, 1983; p. 146.)



Fig. 4: Haustorium of *Viscum album* L., consisting of the primary sinker (i) and several secondary sinkers (e) that are embedded into the host's wood (b, secondary xylem), plus cortical strands (f) that elongate within the host's bark (c); further details are the bark (a) and secondary xylem (h) of the mistletoe's shoot, a secondary mistletoe shoot (g) that originates from a cortical strand (f), and the annual rings shown within the host's secondary xylem (d). (From: Sachs J, Vorlesungen über Pflanzenphysiologie. Leipzig 1882, Verlag Wilhelm Engelmann; p. 33.)

TESTS

Foreign matters (2.8.2):
Maximum 2 per cent.
If the whole batch is checked during harvest / manufacture and foreign matter is sorted out, no test has to be done.

Loss on drying (2.2.32):
If the fresh plant is processed more than 24 h after harvesting, a test for loss on drying should be carried outout

- minimum 50 per cent for aerial parts
- minimum 40 per cent for the haustorium,

determined on 5.0 g of the finely cut drug by drying in an oven at 105°C for 2h if not otherwise specified or till mass constancy.

STORAGE

Fresh mistletoe herb is either processed immediately after harvesting or stored frozen.

MOTHER TINCTURES AND EXTRACTS

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH ONE-YEAR SHOOTS, BUFFERED AQUEOUS EXTRACT, 1:50

DEFINITION

The buffered aqueous extract 1:50 is a composition of extracts / mother tinctures from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of *Viscum album L. ssp. album* (one of these host trees: maple, almond, birch, hawthorn, ash, apple tree or oak) or *Viscum album L. ssp. abietis* (host tree: fir) or *Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum* (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter.

PRODUCTION

The composition is prepared according to method 32 HAB or APC method 7.2.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: green colloidal liquid.

IDENTIFICATION

Liquid chromatography (Ph. Eur. 2.2.29).

Test solution. Introduce 1.5 mL of the extract into a screw-cap bottle and heat at 95°C for 30 minutes. After cooling to room temperature, filter through a membrane filter (nominal pore size 0.45 µm).

Reference solution. Dissolve 2.5 mg rutoside-trihydrate R in methanol R and dilute to 25 mL with the same solvent.

Column:
- *size*: l = 0.25 m, Ø = 4 mm;
- *stationary phase:* end-capped octadecylsilyl silica gel for chromatography R (5 µm); (5 µm); (5 µm);
- *temperature:* 40 °C.

Mobile phase:
- *mobile phase A:* trifluoroacetic acid R, water for chromatography R (0.1:99.9 V/V);
- *mobile phase B:* trifluoroacetic acid R, acetonitrile R (0.1:99.9 V/V);

Time (min)	Mobile phase A (per cent V/V)	Mobile phase B (per cent V/V)
0.0 – 22.0	90 → 50	10 → 50
22.0 – 22.1	50 → 0	50 → 100
22.1 – 23.0	0	100

Flow rate: 1.0 mL/min.

Detection: spectrophotometer at 370 nm.

Injection: 50 µL.

Retention time: rutoside-trihydrate R = about 11 min.
Results: see below exemplary chromatograms obtained with the test solution for the extracts of the 3 different *Viscum album L.* subspecies.
The chromatogram obtained with the test solution contains the main peaks that are marked. Furthermore, other peaks may be present.

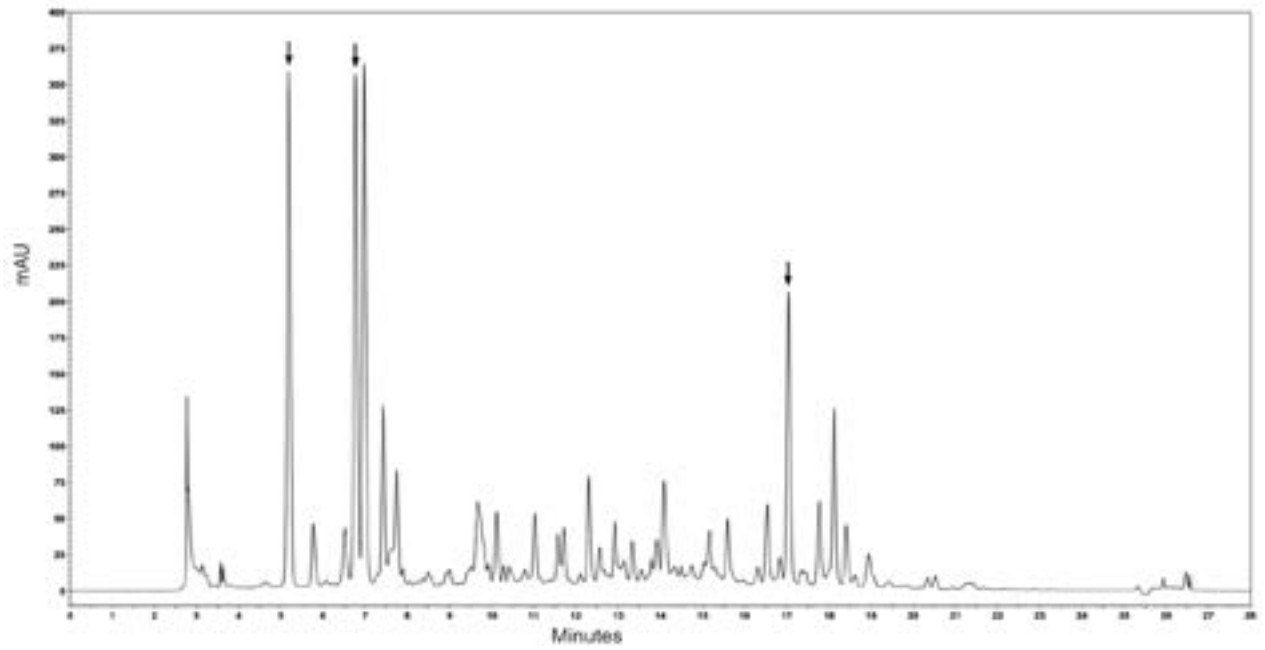


Fig. 5: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. album, buffered aqueous extract 1:50.

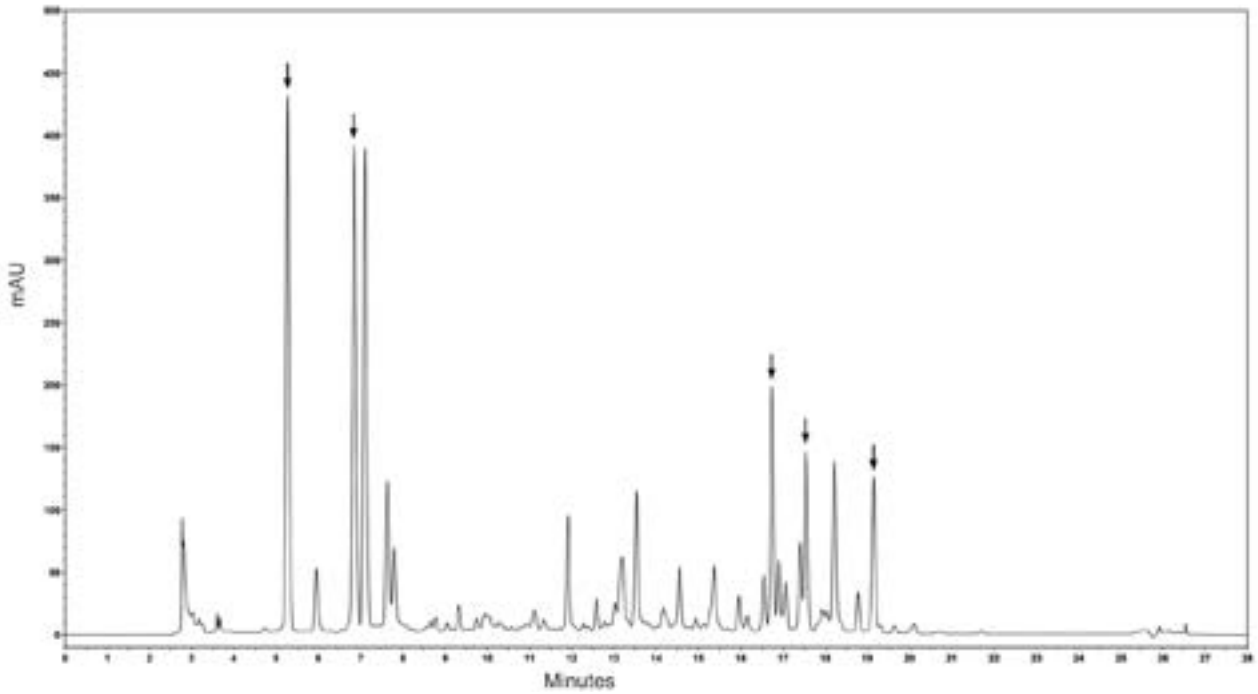


Fig. 6: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. abietis, buffered aqueous extract 1:50.

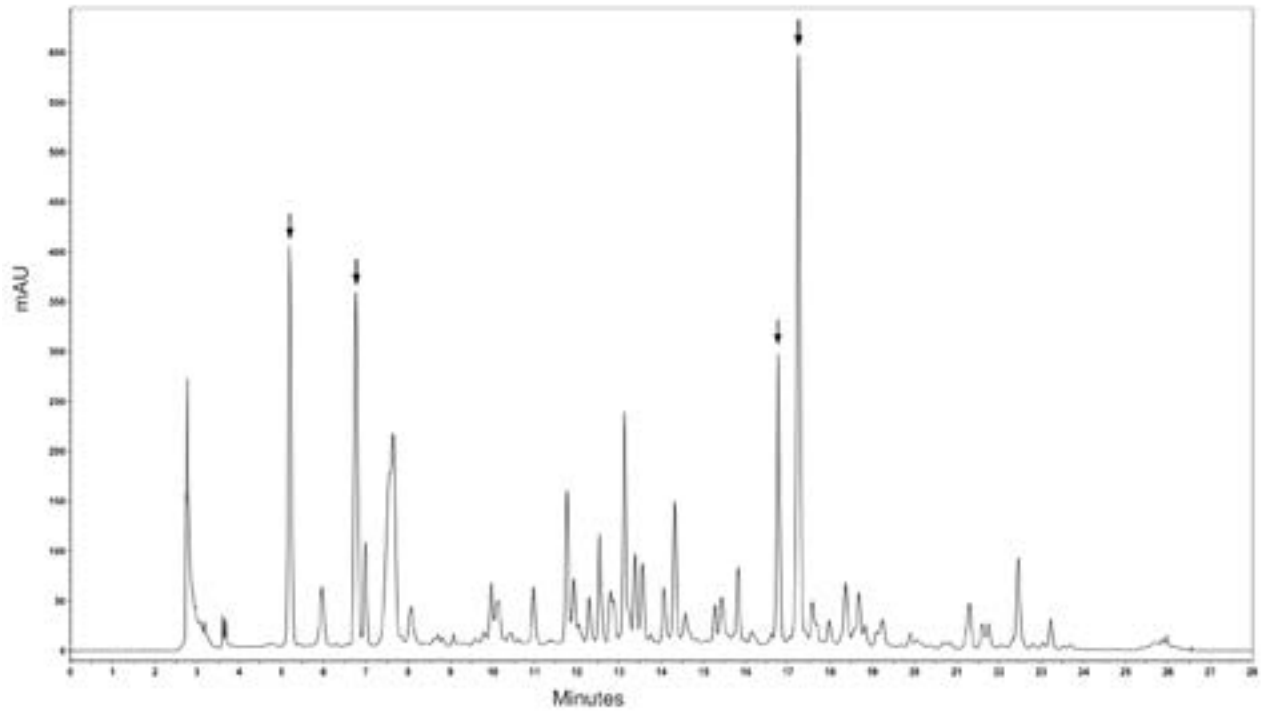


Fig. 7: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. austriacum, buffered aqueous extract 1:50.

TESTS

Dry residue (Ph. Eur. 2.8.16): min. 0.5 %.

pH (Ph. Eur. 2.2.3): 7.3 to 7.5.

STORAGE

Protected from light at 7 to 13°C.

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:20

DEFINITION

The aqueous extract 1:20 is a composition of extracts from fresh plants excluding haustorium of *Viscum album L. ssp. album* (host tree: apple tree) or *Viscum album L. ssp. abietis* (host tree: fir) or *Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum* (host tree: pine), harvested in early spring, in summer, around autumn equinox and in winter.

PRODUCTION

The composition is prepared according to APC method 7.2.2.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: yellowish-brown, clear liquid.

IDENTIFICATION

Liquid chromatography (Ph. Eur. 2.2.29).

Test solution. Prepare a ready-to-use sample preparation cartridge containing 100 mg of octadecylsilyl silica gel for chromatography R (50 µm) using 1 mL of methanol R followed by 1 mL of water R. Apply 5.0 mL of the extract to be analysed to the cartridge. Wash the cartridge with 1 mL of water R and dry. Elute the cartridge with 0.5 mL of methanol R. Mix the eluate with 1.5 mL of water R and use the mixture as the test solution.

Reference solution. Dissolve 2.0 mg of eleutheroside B R (APC) in methanol R and dilute to 5.0 mL with the same solvent. Dilute 1.0 ml of this solution to 20 mL with water R.

Column:
- *size:* l = 0.125 m, Ø = 4 mm;
- *stationary phase:* end-capped octadecylsilyl silica gel for chromatography R (5 µm);
- *temperature:* 25 °C.

Mobile phase:
- mobile phase A: phosphoric acid R, water R (0.3:99.7 V/V)
- mobile phase B: water R, acetonitrile R (5:95 V/V);

Time (min)	Mobile phase A (per cent V/V)	Mobile phase B (per cent V/V)
0 – 30	91 -> 75	9 -> 25
30 – 50	75 -> 50	25 -> 50
50 – 52	50 -> 0	50 ->100
52 – 58	0	100

Flow rate: 1.0 mL/min.

Detection: spectrophotometer at 220 nm.

Injection: 20 µL.

Retention time: eleutheroside B = about 8 min.

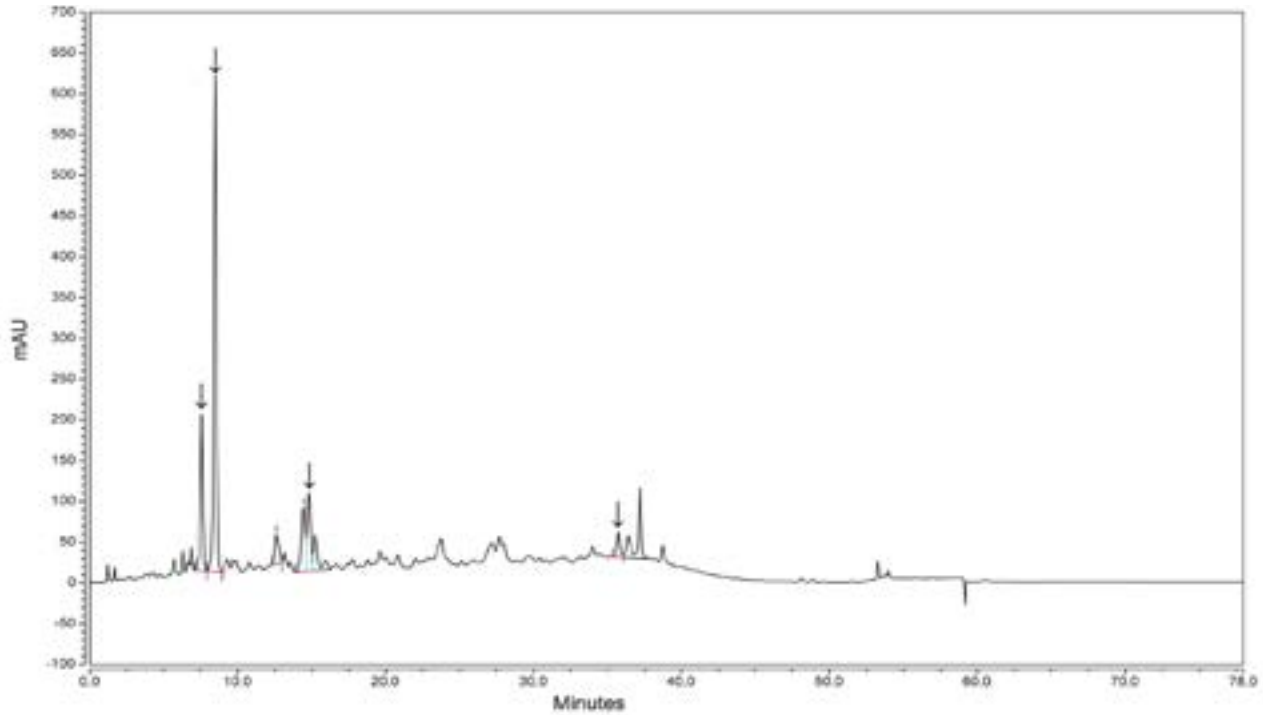


Fig. 8: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. album, aqueous extract 1:20.

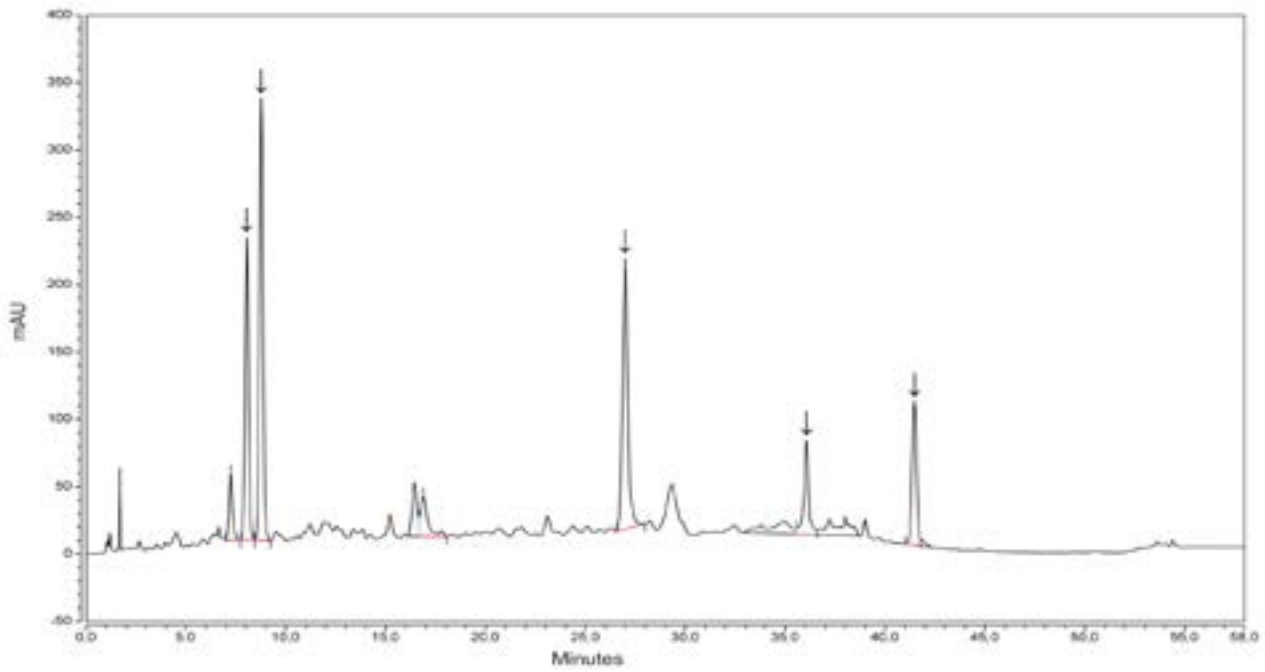


Fig. 9: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. abietis, aqueous extract 1:20.

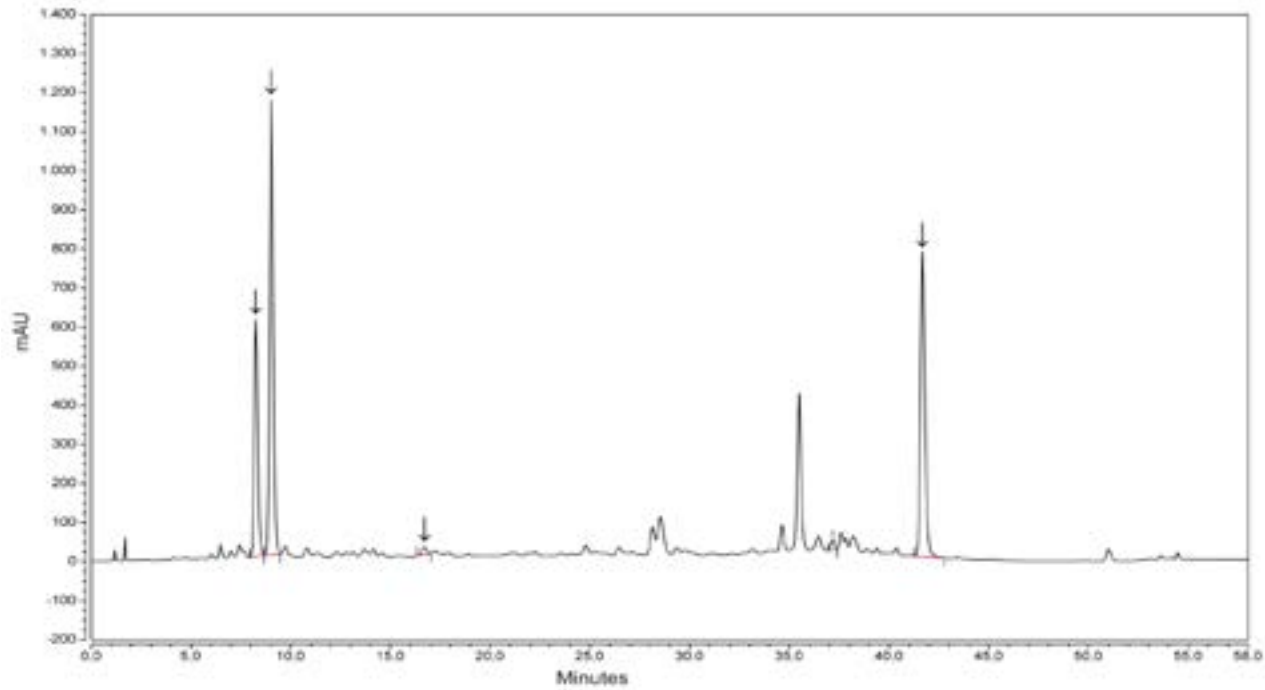


Fig. 10: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. austriacum, aqueous extract 1:20.

Results: see below exemplary chromatograms obtained with the test solution for the 3 *Viscum album L.* subspecies.
The chromatogram obtained with the test solution contain the main peaks that are marked. Furthermore, other peaks may be present.

TESTS
Dry residue (Ph. Eur. 2.8.16): min. 4.9 g/L.

pH (Ph. Eur. 2.2.3): 5.0 to 7.0.

STORAGE
Protected from light at 2 to 8°C.

VISCUM ALBUM L., FRESH PLANTS EXCL. HAUSTORIUM, FERMENTED AQUEOUS EXTRACT 1:5

DEFINITION

The fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is a composition of extracts from fresh one and two year old shoots of *Viscum album L. ssp. album* (host trees: apple tree, elm, oak), *Viscum album L. ssp. abietis* (host tree: fir) or *Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum* (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter.

PRODUCTION

The composition is prepared according to APC method 7.2.3.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: yellowish-brown, clear liquid.

IDENTIFICATION

Liquid chromatography (Ph. Eur. 2.2.29).

Test solution. Adjust the extract to pH 6.5 to 7.0 with 0.1 M sodium hydroxide. Apply 1.0 mL to a cartridge filled with a silica based wide pore (275 A) weak acidic cation exchange resin (40 µm, 500 mg) preconditioned with 5 mL methanol R, 5 mL water R and 5 mL 20 mM ammonium acetate solution (dilute 1.54 g of ammonium acetate R1 to 1000 mL with water R). Wash with 5 mL water R. Elute with 5.0 mL of 0.4 M acetic acid solution (dilute 24 mL of glacial acetic acid R to 1000 mL with water R).

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg ribonuclease A R(APC) in 100 ml water R.

Column:
- *size:* l = 0.125 m, Ø = 4 mm;
- *stationary phase:* end-capped cross-linked octadecylsilyl silica gel for chromatography R (5 µm);
- *temperature:* room temperature (15-25°C).

Mobile phase:
- *mobile phase A:* trifluoroacetic acid R, water R (0.1:99.9 V/V);
- *mobile phase B:* trifluoroacetic acid R, acetonitrile R (0.1:99.9 V/V);

Time (min)	Mobile phase A (per cent V/V)	Mobile phase B (per cent V/V)
0 – 9	62 -> 58	38 -> 42
9 – 9.1	58 -> 50	42 -> 50
9.1 – 17.1	50 -> 46	50 ->54
17.1 – 20	46	54

Flow rate: 1.0 mL/min.

Detection: spectrophotometer at 210 nm.
Injection: 200 µL.

Retention time: ribonuclease A = about 13 min.

Results: see below exemplary chromatograms obtained with the test solution for the 3 *Viscum album* L. subspecies.
The chromatogram obtained with the test solution contain the main peaks that are marked. Furthermore, other peaks may be present.

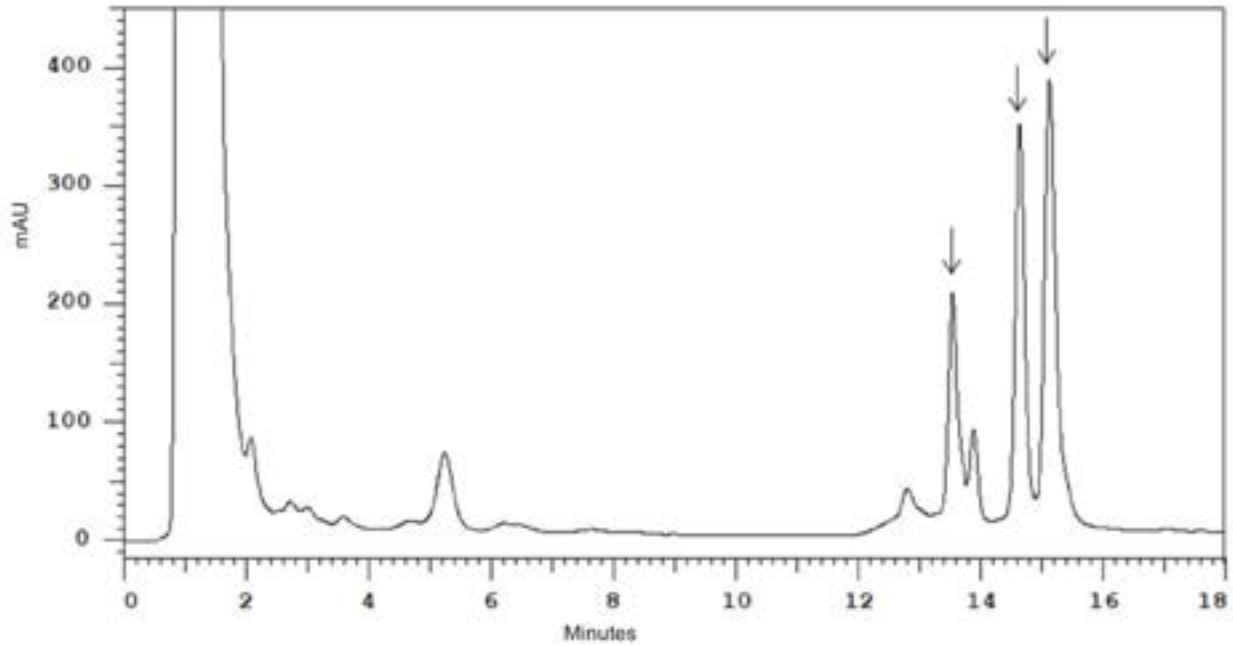


Fig. 11: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. album, fermented aqueous extract 1:5.

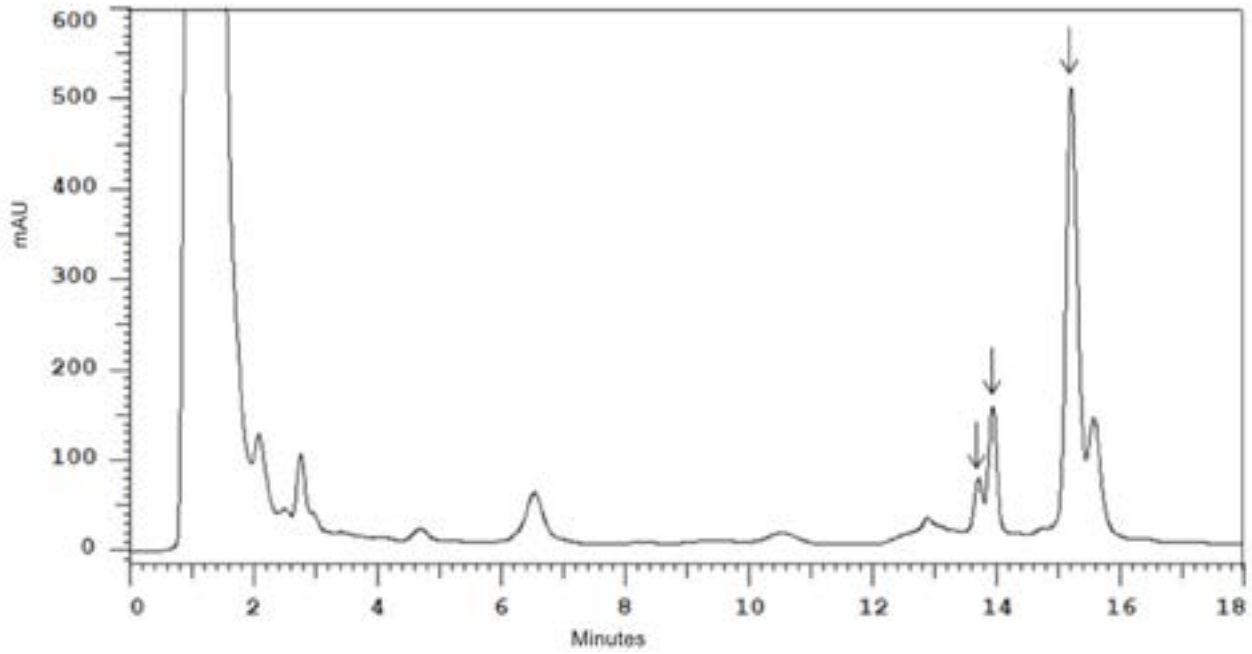


Fig. 12: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. abietis, fermented aqueous extract 1:5.

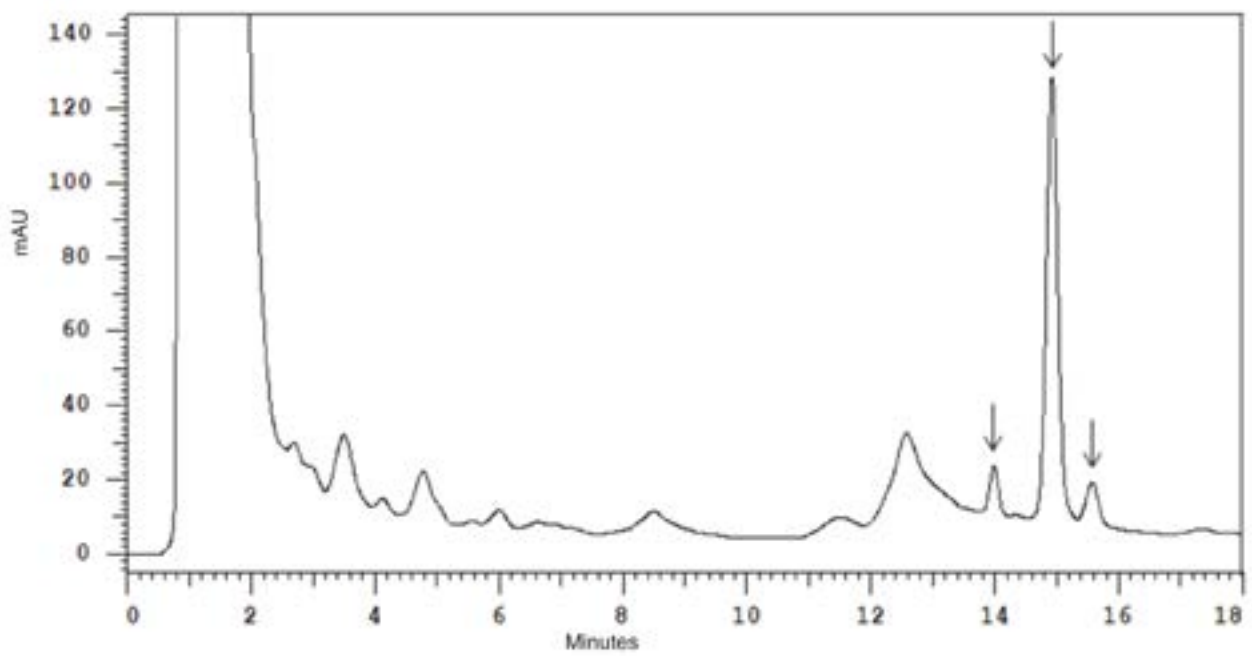


Fig. 13: exemplary chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. austriacum, fermented aqueous extract 1:5.

Tests

Relative density (Ph. Eur. 2.2.5): 1.008 to 1.011.

Dry residue (Ph. Eur. 2.8.16): min. 2.0 %.

pH (Ph. Eur. 2.2.3): 3.5 to 4.1.

Storage

Protected from light at 2 to 8°C.

VISCUM ALBUM L., WHOLE DRIED PLANTS, COLD-TREATED AQUEOUS MOTHER TINCTURE K

DEFINITION
The aqueous mother tincture K is a composition of extracts obtained by cold maceration of whole dried plants (1+6) of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host trees: apple tree, hawthorn, linden tree, oak, poplar, willow), Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (host tree: fir) or Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter. Exception for host tree oak: whole plant excluding haustorium.

PRODUCTION
The composition is prepared according to HAB method 38 (APC method 3.1 and 7.2).

CHARACTERS
Appearance: orange-brown to brown liquid.

IDENTIFICATION
Thin-layer chromatography (Ph. Eur. 2.2.27).

Test solution. Apply 2 mL of the mother tincture to a chromatography column about 150 mm long and about 15 mm in internal diameter containing 2.5 g of kieselguhr, granulated RH. Allow to stand for 15 min. Elute with 15 mL of butanol R. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure and dissolve the residue in 1.0 mL of methanol R.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of caffeic acid R, 10 mg of pyrogallol R and 10 mg of vanillin R in 10 mL of methanol R.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate R.
Mobile phase: water R, methanol R, chloroform R (4:30:70 V/V/V).

Application: 40 µL of test solution and 10 µL of reference solution, as bands of 15 mm.

Development: over a path of 8 cm.

Drying: in air.
Detection: spray with a freshly prepared mixture of 2 volume parts of glacial acetic acid R and 1 volume part of chlorosulfonic acid R (APC), heat approx. 10 min at approx. 105 °C and examine in daylight.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Furthermore, other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Vanillin: a faint green or pink zone	a grey zone may appear
Pyrogallol: a red-brown zone	a grey-violet zone
Caffeic acid: a grey-violet zone	2 brown-violet zones
	a yellow-brown zone
	a grey-brown zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

Fig. 14: chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. abietis and Viscum album L. ssp. album, cold-treated aqueous mother tinctures K.

Top of the plate	
Vanillin: a faint green or pink zone	an orange zone may appear
Pyrogallol: a red-brown zone	a brown zone
Caffeic acid: a grey-violet zone	a brown zone
	a brown zone
	a grey-brown zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

Fig. 15: chromatogram for the identification test of *Viscum album* L. ssp. austriacum, cold-treated aqueous mother tincture K.

Tests

Relative density (Ph. Eur. 2.2.5): 1.020 to 1.040.

Dry residue (based on Ph. Eur. 2.8.16): min. 4.0 %, determined on 1.00 g of mother tincture by drying for 4 to 5 hours at 105 °C.

pH (Ph. Eur. 2.2.3): 4.5 to 5.7.

Storage

The composition is used immediately.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIC
Dosage forms

PART IIC

Dosage forms **84**
1. ANTHROPOSOPHICAL-PHARMACEUTICAL BASES FOR SEMI-SOLID PREPARATIONS 87
1.1. Water-emulsifying ointments 87
1.2. Hydrophobic ointments 88
1.3. Gels.....89

Dosage forms
Principally an anthroposophic medicinal product can be administered in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms, with or without excipients.
A dosage form of an anthroposophic medicinal product complies with any relevant dosage form monograph and any relevant test for that dosage form as described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the EU Member States.

Main dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products and concerning references to official pharmacopoeias:

Main dosage forms for oral use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Capsules	Capsules	Ph.Eur. (*0016*)
Granules	Granules	Ph.Eur. (*0499*)
Homoeopathic Pillules, coated	Globuli velati	Ph.Eur.Hom. (*1038, 2786*), (HAB Method 39)
Homoeopathic Pillules, impregnated	Pillules	Ph.Eur.Hom (*1038*, *2079*), (HAB Method 10)
Tablets	Tablets	Ph.Eur. (*0478*), Ph.Eur.Hom. (*1038),* HAB Method 9
Powders, oral	Trituration	Ph.Eur. (*1165*)
Oral drops	Oral drops	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Syrups	Syrups	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Oral solution	Mother tincture, Dilution	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)

Main dosage forms for cutaneous use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Creams	Creams	Ph.Eur. (*0132*)
Ointments	Ointments	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Methods 13 and 48
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Method 13
Externa	Externa	HAB Methods 12
Liquid preparations (other)	Oils and tinctures for external use, external emulsions, suspensions	Ph.Eur. (*0927*), HAB Methods 12
Powders	Powders	Ph.Eur. (*1166*)

Main dosage forms for auricular use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Ear drops	Ear drops	Ph.Eur. (*0652*)

Main dosage forms for ophthalmic use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Eye drops	Eye drops	Ph.Eur. (*1163*), HAB Method 15
Semi-solid eye preparations	Eye ointments	Ph.Eur. (*1163*)

Main dosage forms for nasal use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Nasal drops, solution	Nasal drops	Ph.Eur. (*0676*), HAB Method 45
Nasal spray, solution	Nasal spray	Ph.Eur. (*0676*)

Main dosage forms for oromucosal use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Solutions	Solutions	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Sprays	Sprays	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Pillules	Pillules	Ph.Eur.Hom. (*1038, 2153*),

Main dosage forms for vaginal use		**Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Semi-solid vaginal preparations	Globules	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Vaginal tablets	Vagitories	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)

Main dosage forms for rectal use		Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Suppositories	Suppositories	Ph.Eur. (*1145*), HAB Method 14

Main dosage forms for parenteral use		Pharmacopoeial Reference(s):
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Injections	Liquid dilutions for injection, ampoules, Solutions for injection	Ph.Eur. (*0520*), HAB Method 11

Identification Tests:

Where it is not practical, for unlicensed pharmaceutical preparations, to carry out the described tests (e.g. due to small batch size, time restraints), other suitable methods are implemented to ensure that the appropriate quality is achieved in accordance with the risk assessment carried out and any local guidance or legal requirements.

1. ANTHROPOSOPHICAL-PHARMACEUTICAL BASES FOR SEMI-SOLID PREPARATIONS

Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application are the most important dosage form of topical preparations. The skin as a site of application is assigned to the nerve-sense system in anthroposophic medicine. Topicals can address this system directly or correspondingly reach the metabolic-limb system in the lower human.[1]

Pharmaceutical formulation can take up, continue, and strengthen the active impulse of the active substances and their composition. The pharmaceutical formulation can therefore be part of a composition. (Reference for APC Committee new def. Compositions APC Part IA 2.6.). This approach is considered in the part Gels in this monograph.

Ointments
Ointments consists of a single-phase system basis in which solids or liquids may be dispersed. **Hydrophobic ointments** can absorb only small amounts of water. They are suitable for dispersing metals and insoluble minerals. Since these active substances belong to the mineral kingdom, minerals as paraffin should preferably be used as excipients. **Water-emulsifying ointments** can absorb larger amounts of water and other liquids as e.g. tinctures. Water-in-oil emulsifiers such as wool alcohols produce water-in-oil emulsions with the liquid, active substance in the dispersed phase.

Gels
Hydrophilic gels are single-phase aqueous systems. By the addition of suitable gelling agents, the aqueous phase is shaped and transformed into a semi-solid dosage form. From an anthroposophical point of view, this pharmaceutical-technological design can be extended by qualitative-anthroposophical aspects i.e., between the polarities of forming, centering on the one side, and dissolving, dynamizing on the other. This is achieved by consciously selecting the excipients.

1.1. Water-emulsifying ointments

Ointment basis for cutaneous application of liquid preparations or stocks
(Unguentum Alcoholum Lanae)

Production

Cetostearyl alcohol	0.5 parts
Wool fat alcohols	6.0 parts
Paraffin, white soft	93.5 parts

Up to 12 parts of the white soft paraffin can be replaced with liquid paraffin.
The substances are warmed until molten, e.g. on a water bath and the mixture stirred until cooled.
The ointment must, if applicable, meet the requirements in the Ph.Eur. monograph “Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application” (0132).

[1]Steiner, R., Spiritual Science and Medicine GA 312. 2nd lecture. Now available: "Indroducing Anthroposophical Medicine" (1999), Steiner Books, Herndon, VA USA.

87

Characters
Appearance: Translucent, yellowish white to yellow soft ointment.
Odour: weak, characteristic

Identification
If appropriate, the following test must be done:

Cholesterol: The solution of 0.50 g ointment in 5 ml chloroform R turns emerald green within a few seconds after mixing with 1 ml acetic anhydride R and 0.1 ml sulfuric acid R.

Tests
Water-absorption capacity. Place 10 g of ointment in a mortar and triturate with 20 mL water, added in several portions. From the nearly white emulsion no water is separated within 24 h.

Preparation of water containing ointments:

The ointment basis for cutaneous application of liquid preparations can theoretically incorporate more than 100% of water. For a manually preparation lower contents are common. For the preparation of ointments containing water-based or ethanolic extracts or tinctures, however, the amount of liquids should not exceed 60%. The stability of all preparations needs to be checked for each individual case.

Preparation
The ointment basis is heated to approximately 60°C, e.g. on a water bath, and the liquid has to be incorporated in small portions to the warm oily phase. The emulsifying process could be supported by incorporating the liquid phase warm. If the liquid phase is suitable, this phase could be heated up to 60°C too. The ointment must be stirred until slowly cooled.

Packaging material for the medicinal product
Aluminum tube with protective inner coating
Other packaging must be tested for suitability.

Storage
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, at a temperature not exceeding 25 °C.

For water containing ointments:
Store in an airtight container, protected from light, at a temperature not exceeding 25 °C.

Shelf-life
3 months after production.
This shelf life is subject to the specified packaging material. The shelf life must be verified for other packaging.

Labelling
According to national labelling regulations.

1.2. Hydrophobic ointments

Ointment basis for cutaneous application of insoluble active substances

Preparation of the medicinal product

Amount of active substance	≤ 10 parts
Paraffin, liquid q.s.,	max. 30 parts
Paraffin, white soft	ad 100 parts

Method A: The active substance is completely covered with liquid paraffin by stirring to get a homogenous distribution of the active substance. Then the white soft paraffin is added in small portions by stirring continuously to get a homogenous suspension.

Method B (compliant to method 48 HAB): White soft paraffin is warmed until molten, e.g. on a water bath, liquid paraffin added and the mixture stirred until cooled. Then 1 part of the active substance is triturated with 9 parts of the basis, added in small portions, to get a homogenous suspension.

The ointment must, if applicable, meet the requirements in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).

Characters
Appearance: ointment, homogenous dispersion in color und appearance
Odour: weak, characteristic

Packaging material for the medicinal product
Aluminum tube with protective inner coating
Other packaging must be tested for suitability.

Storage
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, at a temperature not exceeding 25 °C.

Shelf-life
2 years after production
This shelf life is subject to the specified packaging material. The shelf life must be verified for other packaging.

Labelling
According to national labelling regulations.

1.3. Gels

Design aspects	Form principle		Dissolving, dynamising principle
Siliceous process	Silicates	-	-
pH	Acid	Neutral	Alkaline
Preservation	Ethanol	(Cold) pressed essential (peel) oils	Distilled essential oils
Structure/Viscosity	High degree of structuring	-	Low degree of structuring
Sensory	Solide Cooling	Soft	Liquid

Production

Components

Legend:

a = preserved with ethanol b = preserved with essential oils

Variant	**1**		**2**		**3**		**4**	
Type of preservation	**a**	**b**	**a**	**b**	**a**	**b**	**a**	**b**
Xanthan gum	1,5	1,5	2,0	2,0	1,5	1,5	2,0	2,0
Glycerol (anhydrous)	9,0	9,0	9,0	9,0	9,0	9,0	9,0	9,0
Silicon dioxide, highly dispersed	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0	-	-	-	-
Citric acid monohydrate	0,2	0,2	-	-	0,2	0,2	-	-
Sodium citrate	0,6	0,6	-	-	0,6	0,6	-	-
Amount of active substances *)	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0	≤ 20,0
Ethanol 96%	**) 15,0	-	**) 25,0	-	**) 15,0	-	**) 25,0	
Thyme oil of the thymol type	-	0,2	-	0,2	-	0,2	-	0,2
Citric oil	-	0,5	-	0,5	-	0,5	-	0,5
Purified water	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0	ad 100.0

*): *Optional amount of active substances: Individual weights of up to a maximum of 20.0 (m/m) of aqueous and ethanolic (mother) tinctures, plant extracts, potency mixtures etc.*

**): *Is adjusted for ethanol-containing amount of active substances according to the formula in section "Preservation".*

Design aspects	Form principle						Dissolving, dynamising principle	
Variant	**1a**	**1b**	**2a**	**2b**	**3a**	**3b**	**4a**	**4b**
Silicon dioxide (silicate component)	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Citrate buffer (pH 5.5)	✓	✓			✓	✓		
Ethanol	✓		✓		✓		✓	
Oil (thyme/lemon)		✓		✓		✓		✓

89

Preparation

1. Triturate xanthan gum with glycerol and, if necessary, the essential oils in a pestle-tared bowl.
   In-process control: A homogeneous mixture is present.
2. The remaining components are mixed, dissolved or suspended in a beaker with a glass rod until a homogeneous mixture, solution or suspension is obtained. Suspensions and solutions with sediment must be stirred completely before further processing.
   In-process control: The mixture of the aqueous phase is homogeneous. All soluble components are dissolved completely.
3. This mixture is continuously and very quickly transferred to the bowl while stirring. Stir until a homogeneous gel is obtained. When stirring ethanol-containing formulations for a longer period of time, the evaporation loss of ethanol must be taken into account.
   In-process control: The preparation is homogeneous and opaque. It may contain air bubbles.

Preservation

Preservation variant a):
In these variants, ethanol is used as a preservative. The amount of ethanol contained in the gel leads to an increase in viscosity, which can cause an inhomogeneous gel structure at higher concentrations. Therefore, for ethanol-containing active ingredients, the ethanol added for preservation must be reduced by the amount of ethanol contained in the amount of active ingredient. The following formula is used for this purpose:

$$m(Eth.) = \frac{\boldsymbol{X} \cdot 93{,}84\%\text{-m } (\textit{active ingredient}) \cdot \omega\ (\textit{active ingredient})}{93{,}84\ \%}$$

Legend:
X = Weight [g] of the added ethanol 96% *(V/V)* according to the formulation variant (15% *(m/m)* or 25% *(m/m)* of the preparation quantity)
Conversion of ethanol content according to Ph. Eur. (5.5 Ethanol table): 96% *(V/V)* corresponds to 93,84% *(m/m)*

m=Weight [g]
ω=Ethanol content %(m/m)

Thus, the required amount of 15% of ethanol 96% (V/V) for the variants 1a) and 3a) and the required amount of 25% of ethanol 96% (V/V) for the variants 2a) and 4a) is guaranteed.
For the microbiological quality of the buffered **variants 1a) and 3a), the pH** must be **less than 6**. In the buffered formulations, the pH is 5.5. Alkaline active ingredients may require an increase in the added weight of citric acid.

Preservation variant b):
Essential oils are used for preservation in these formulation variants. For the combination of thyme oil (of the thymol type) and lemon oil in the present concentration, sufficient preservation is proven and also shows the highest reduction of cfu compared to other preservatives tested.

Packaging material

Aluminum tube with protective inner coating
Other packaging must be tested for suitability.

Storage

Store in an airtight container, at a temperature not exceeding 25 °C.

Shelf-life

6 months after production.
This shelf life is subject to the specified packaging material. The shelf life must be verified for other packaging.

Labelling

According to national labelling regulations.

Release Testing

The testing to be carried out in connection with the release must be oriented to the individual case and must include at least a risk-based sensory test.
Note: All specification parameters may deviate from the listed data depending on the added active ingredient and must be adjusted accordingly and individually.

Characters

Odour: Characteristic, depending on preservation:
Preservation variant a) similar to ethanol;
Preservation variant b) similar to thyme oil
Appearance: Opaque - colour depends on variant and added active ingredient
Haptic: Easily spreadable gel, slightly cooling effect when applied to the skin.

Tests

pH: Variants 1a + 3a) pH < 6
Further examination:
If applicable, the preparation complies with the requirements for microbiological quality of preparations for cutaneous application (e.g., Ph.Eur. 5.1.4).

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART III
Appendices

PART III
Appendices 92
Note concerning appendix 2.3. 93
References concerning nomenclature in appendices 2.1. to 2.7. 93
Note concerning the references for use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7. 93
IVAA Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin 95
APPENDIX 2.1 99
List of minerals, rocks and natural waters 99
APPENDIX 2.2 109
List of starting materials of botanical origin 109
APPENDIX 2.3 169
List of starting materials of zoological origin 169
APPENDIX 2.4 199
Starting materials that can be described chemically 199
APPENDIX 2.5 217
Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods) 217
APPENDIX 2.6 221
List of compositions 221
APPENDIX 2.7 241
Stocks with special manufacturing methods 241

Note concerning appendix 2.3.
Animal substances marked with "*" belong to category A materials according to "Note for guidance on minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products" if sourced e.g. from cattle *Bos taurus* L. Though sourcing from animals below 6 months of age from herds not fed with meat bone meal has been practice up to now in the field of concerning anthroposophic quality management, pharmaceutical manufacturers must continuously adapt their sourcing to the requirements of the Note for guidance, such as changing the donor animal. The APC Committee needs to reflect the existing practice and will adapt to implemented changes.

References concerning nomenclature in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.

Erhardt W, Götz E, Bödeker N, Seybold S. Zander:
Handwörterbuch der Pflanzennamen.
Stuttgart: Eugen Ulmer; 2008.

Roberts WL, Rapp GR Jr, Weber J.
Encyclopedia of Minerals.
New York: Van Nostrand; 1974.

Schindler H, Helma F.
Tiere in der Pharmazie und Medizin.
Stuttgart: Hippokrates-Verlag; 1961.

Teuscher E.
Biogene Arzneimittel.
Stuttgart: Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH; 1997.

Note concerning the references for use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.
The references given in the columns to the right in the appendices 2.1 to 2.6 aim to provide evidence, that the particular starting material is known and has been part of the medicinal tradition in anthroposophic medicine.

Where available, the monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger) have been referred to. Some starting materials are mentioned in monographs of combined products only (e.g. Amethyst in Tropaeolum comp.)
Not all starting materials are mentioned in the Commission C monographs, because on the one hand its work stopped in 1994 after the 5th amendment of the German Drug law prior to completion work. On the other hand a number of starting materials in the lists are only known in the anthroposophic medicine tradition in countries other than Germany. The Commission C monographs also refer to specific and composed active substances as well as existing pharmaceutical products. A number of references from other sources may refer generically to particular raw or starting materials, sometimes without linking to specific active substances. The latter references show that the raw or starting material has been considered in therapeutic and pharmaceutical grounds in anthroposophic medicine. They may however also refer to specific active substances.

Where there is no reference, the particular starting material has not yet been presented or discussed in publications. However anthroposophic pharmaceutical manufacturers place medicinal products on the market obtained from those starting materials. The IAAP sees it as its task to promote the writing of publications, to support the relevance of the starting material in anthroposophic medicine. Much work still needs to be done.

References concerning the use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.

Der Merkurstab
(Zeitschrift für anthroposophische Medizin – Journal of Anthroposophic Medicine).
Munich: Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany).

Gardin N, Schleier R.
Vademecum, medicamentos antroposoficos.
São Paulo-SP: João de Barra Editora Ltda; 2009.
Portugese. Abbr. ABMA Vademecum.

Glöckler M.
Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie
(Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products). Stuttgart: Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft; 2010. Abbr. Glöckler.

International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, IVAA.
Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products.
Brussels: printed in APC Appendix I; 2013.

Monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger). Publication as compilation: Anthroposophische Arzneimittel, Aufbereitungsmonographien der Kommission C, published by Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany registered association) on behalf of the Medical Section at the Goetheanum, Dornach/ Switzerland; 1999.

Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. Munich (Germany); 2017; 4th edition 2017. Abbr. Vademecum.

Arendt A, Debus M, Karutz M, Kienle GS, Kuck A, Kummer K-R, et al., editors. Vademecum of Anthroposophic Medicines Third English edition. Munich: Association of Anthroposophic Physicians in Germany (GAÄD); 2017. Abbr. Vademecum Engl.

Meyer, U. & Pedersen, P.A. (ed): Anthroposophische Pharmazie. Salumed Verlag, Berlin 2016. Abbr. Anthroposophische Pharmazie.

Les Associations francaises de médecine anthroposophique: Répertoire de médecine d'orientation anthroposophique. Edition Juin 2016. (abbr. Répertoire de med. anthr.).

IVAA Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztegesellschaften
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

IVAA Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin
Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products

Anthroposophic medicinal products containing preparations from starting materials of animal origin belong to the range of anthroposophic therapeutics.[1]

Most of these starting materials and/or the anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are mentioned in anthroposophic medical literature or in official regulatory documents. A certain number of these however are not mentioned in such references, although belonging to the range of anthroposophically used starting materials of animal origin. The anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are available to doctors.[2]

This statement confirms the anthroposophic therapeutic usage and relevance of these starting materials.[3]

The starting materials of animal origin are listed on the following pages.[4]

For the IVAA
Dr. Thomas Breitkreuz

For the IMKA (Internationale medizinische Koordination Arzneimittel)
Dr. Andreas Arendt

05.12.2019

[1] Girke M. Internal Medicine. 1st edition. Berlin: Salumed Verlag; 2016.
[2] Jütte R. Organpräparate in der Geschichte der „Schulmedizin", der Homöopathie und der Anthroposophischen Medizin. Der Merkurstab 2009; 1: 49–60.
[3] Roemer F. Sommer M. Zur Bedeutung der potenzierten Organpräparate in der anthroposophischen Therapierichtung. Der Merkurstab 1998; Sonderheft Organpräparate.
[4] Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. 4. edition. Filderstadt (Germany); 2017.

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Aorta	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Aorta from the rabbit
Aranea avicularis	*Avicularia avicularia L*	Whole bird spider
Arteria basilaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria basilaris from the calf
Arteria brachialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria brachialis from the calf
Arteria coeliaca	*see Truncus coeliacus*	
Arteria pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf
Arteria renalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria renalis from the calf
Articulatio cubiti	*Bos taurus L.*	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf
Articulatio radiocarpea	*Bos taurus L.*	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf
Articulatio temporomandibularis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the os mandibulare and of the os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intercarpeae	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Atlas	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf
Axis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Axis (2. cervical) from the calf
Cartilago articularis coxae	*Bos taurus L.*	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf
Cervix uteri	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the neck of the womb from the cow
Circulus arteriosus cerebri	*Bos taurus L.*	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf
Coccus cacti	*Dactylopius coccus Costa*	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa
Columna anterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf
Columna posterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf
Cornu Caprae ibecis	*Capra ibex L.*	Horn from the ibex
Dactylopius coccus	see *Coccus cacti*	
Dens	*Bos taurus L.*	Teeth from the calf
Diencephalon	*Bos taurus L.*	Diencephalon from the calf

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Dura mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Dura mater encephali from the calf
Endocardium	*Bos taurus L.*	Endocardium from the calf
Epididymis	*Bos taurus L.*	Left epididymis from the bull
Erytrocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse
Galea aponeurotica	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf
Glandula parotis	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandula suprarenalis (cortex) from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	*Bos taurus L.*	Medulla glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands from the calf
Gyrus cinguli	*Bos taurus L.*	Gyrus cinguli from the calf
Hepar	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Liver from the rabbit
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf
Lingua	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf
Liquor cerebrospinalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Liquor cerebrospinalis from the calf
Moschus	*Moschus moschiferus L.*	Secretion of bursa from male Moschus moschiferus L.
Musculi glutaei	*Bos taurus L.*	Gluteal muscles from the calf
Musculus soleus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the musculus soleus-complex, musculus soleus, musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, musculus gastrocnemius from the calf
Mygale avicularis	*see Aranea avicularis*	
Nervus abducens	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus abducens from the calf
Nervus accessorius	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus accessorius from the calf
Nervus femoralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus femoralis from the calf
Nervus hypoglossus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf
Nervus pudendus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus pudendus from the calf
Nervus radialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus radialis from the calf
Nervus tibialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus tibialis from the calf
Nervus ulnaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus ulnaris from the calf
Oesophagus	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Oesophagus from the pig
Ossicula auditus	*Bos taurus L.*	Auditory bones from the calf

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Papillae duodeni	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig
Pars pallida	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf
Patella	*Bos taurus L.*	Patella from the calf
Penis	*Bos taurus L.*	Penis from the bull
Pia mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Pia mater encephali from the calf
Plexus lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Plexus lumbalis from the calf
Plexus rectalis	*see Plexus haemorrhoidalis*	
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of tissue from the pelvis renalis and medulla renalis from the calf
Sclera	*Bos taurus L.*	Sclera from the calf
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-complex; sinus cavernosus, nervus opticus, nervus oculomotorius, nervus trochlearis, nervus trigeminus and nervus abducens from the calf
Thrombocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse
Tonsilla pharyngea	*Bos taurus L.*	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf
Trachea	*Bos taurus L.*	Trachea from the calf
Truncus coeliacus	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria coeliaca (Truncus coeliacus) from the calf
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig
Tunica mucosa recti	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig
Ureter	*Bos taurus L.*	Ureter from the calf
Vagina	*Bos taurus L.*	Vagina from the cow
Valva trunci pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf
Valvula mitralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva mitralis from the calf
Vena cava	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the vena cava cranialis and vena cava caudalis from the calf
Vena portae	*Bos taurus L.*	Vena portae from the calf
Vertebra cervicalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf
Vertebra coccygea	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra coccygea from the calf
Vertebra lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf

APPENDIX 2.1

List of minerals, rocks and natural waters

Explanations

Name of the substance:	Most widely accepted name of the substance used traditionally, if available of the monograph (HAB/Ph.fr.: first name of the monograph, Ph.Eur.: latin name of the monograph). If no reference is given company monograph exists.
Preparation method:	Methods for processing the substance and for other uses The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Additional Information, see p. 17

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Agate water	Water existing inside an undamaged Agate geode			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2		Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Amber	Fossilized tree resin	HAB	Succinum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and 3.1.1 or 3.1.2), 4.1.2	Corpus vitreum/Succinum; Olibanum comp./Succinum; Rosmarinus comp.; Stannum/Succinum; Succinum	
Antimonite	See Stibnite					
Apatite	The natural mineral (calcium fluor-phosphate chem.: $Ca_5[(PO_4)_3,(OH,F,Cl)]$)	HAB	Apatit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apatit; Apatit/Conchae; Apatit/Phosphorus comp.; Apatit/Stannum; Cerebellum comp. ; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum praeparatum comp.; Stannum comp.	
Aqua maris	See Seawater					
Aragonite	The natural mineral (calcium carbonate; chem.: $CaCO_3$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Argentite	The natural mineral	HAB	Argentit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Argentit	Vademecum
Arsenopyrite	The natural mineral (arsenic-iron sulfide; chem.: FeAsS)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Arsenopyrit
Aurum metallicum naturale	The natural mineral (naturally occurring gold with traces of other elements)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and 3.2.2), 4.1.2	Aurum metallicum; Aurum/Prunus	
Barysilite	The natural mineral (Lead manganese silicate;chem.: $Pb_8Mn(Si_2O_7)_3$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barysilit	Vademecum
Berthierite	The natural mineral (antimony-iron sulfide; chem.: $FeSb_2S_4$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Bolus alba	See Kaolinite					
Cassiterite	The natural mineral (tin oxide; chem.: SnO_2)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Kassiterit	Vademecum: Kassiterit
Cerite	The natural mineral (complex silicate of rare earth elements (cerium, lanthanum and others) and calcium, magnesium and iron)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cor/Crataegus comp.	Vademecum
Cerussite	The natural mineral (lead carbonate; chem.: $PbCO_3$)	HAB	Cerussit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for production of Plumbum silicicum	Cerussit ; Plumbum silicicum	Vademecum
Chalcedony	The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and then 3.1.1), 4.1.2		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Chalcocite	The natural mineral (copper sulfide; chem.: Cu_2S)	HAB	Chalkosin	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2	Chalkosin; Thyreoidea comp.	
Chalcopyrite	The natural mineral (copper-iron sulfide; chem.: $CuFeS_2$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Chlorargyrite	The natural mineral (silver chloride; chem.: AgCl)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.	
Chrysolite	The natural mineral (magnesium-iron silicate; chem.: $(Mg,Fe)_2SiO_4$)	HAB	Chrysolith	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Chrysolith; Chrysolith comp.	Vademecum
Chrysoprase	The natural mineral (silicic acid with small amounts of nickel)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2		
Cinnabar	The natural mineral (mercury sulfide; chem.: HgS)	HAB	Zinnober	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Agropyron comp.; Barium comp. ; Pyrit/ Zinnober; Zinnober; Zinnober comp.	Vademecum
Cuprite	The natural mineral (copper oxide; chem.: Cu_2O)	HAB	Cuprit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprit	
Diaspore	The natural mineral (aluminium oxide hydroxide; chem.: AlOOH)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Dioptase	The natural mineral (copper silicate; chem.: $Cu_6Si_6O_{18}·6H_2O$)	HAB	Dioptas	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Dioptas	
Dyscrasite	The natural mineral	HAB	Dyskrasit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Dyskrasit	
Emerald	A green variety of beryl (aluminium-beryllium silicate; chem.: $Al_2Be_3(Si_6O_{18})$, coloured by trace amounts of chromium and sometimes vanadium			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Ferrum sidereum	See Iron meteorite					
Ferrum silicicum naturale	See Nontronite					
Flint	The natural mineral (chem.: silicic acid SiO_2)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2 (in Lapis cancri/ Flintstein together with Lapis cancri), Raw material for preparing Silex - Lapis cancri solutus (see app. 2.6)	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	
Fluorite	The natural mineral (calcium fluoride; chem.: CaF_2)	HAB	Fluorit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Fluorit; Ratanhia comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Salvia comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Galena	The natural mineral (lead sulfide; chem.: PbS)	HAB	Galenit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Betula/Mandragora comp.; Bleiglanz/ Secale comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Retina comp.; Retina/Secale comp.	
Garnet	The natural mineral: Almandine (iron-aluminium silicate; chem.: $Fe_3Al_2(SiO_4)_3$) or other varieties			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(1): 57-58
Glacies Mariae	See selenite					
Gneiss	The natural pale rock (Gneiss from Gastein (A); consisting of quartz, feldspar, mica and others); syn. Lapis albus			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Gold	see Aurum metallicum naturale					
Granite	The natural rock (consisting of quartz, feldspar and mica and others)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Graphite	The natural mineral (hexagonal Carbon; chem.: C, with traces of iron and other elements)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Graphites HAB; Graphites pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites; Graphites; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato; Tropaeolum comp.	
Halite	The natural mineral (sodium chloride; chem.: NaCl)	HAB	Halit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, API	Halit	
Hekla Lava	See Lava					
Hematite	The natural mineral (irone oxide; chem.: Fe_2O_3)	HAB	Hämatit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2 raw material for preparations acc. to HAB 37a		
Hyacinth	See Zircon					
Hydrargyrum metallicum naturale	See Mercurius vivus naturalis					
Iron meteorite	The natural meteoric iron (a kind of alloy with iron, nickel and cobalt)	HAB	Ferrum sidereum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apatit/Phosphorus comp.; Aurum/ Ferrum sidereum ; Crataegus/Ferrum sidereum/Saccharum tostum; Ferrum sidereum; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Meteoreisen/Phosphor/Quarz	Vademecum
Jasper	A red variety of chalcedony (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2 with iron oxide)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Kaolinite	The natural mineral (aluminium silicate; chem.: $Al_4[(OH)_8/Si_4O_{10}]$; syn.: China clay	Ph.Eur.	Kaolinum ponderosum	API, Excipient	Bolus alba comp.; Bolus Eucalypti comp.	
Kassiterite	See Cassiterite					
Katoptrite	The natural mineral (complex manganese-antimony-iron silicate)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Kieserite	The natural mineral (magnesium sulfate; chem.: $MgSO_4 \cdot H_2O$)	HAB	Kieserit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (see monograph: D1 with water)	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Kieserit; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.	
Lapis albus	See Gneiss					
Lapis sectilis	See Argillaceous Shale					
Lava	The natural rock from volcano Hekla (Iceland) with a content of at least 50 % silicon dioxide, SiO_2 (Mr 60.1) and at least 18 % iron(III) oxide	HAB	Hekla Lava e lava	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Levico water	Mineral water from the source Levico, Italy	APC	Levico water	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Levico; Levico comp.	Vademecum
Magnesite	The natural mineral (magnesium carbonate; chem.: $MgCO_3$)	HAB	Magnesit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Magnesit; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	Vademecum
Malachite	The natural mineral (basic copper carbonate; chem.: $Cu_2(CO_3)(OH)_2$)	HAB	Malachit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, raw material for the production of API (for e.g. Viscum Mali c. Cupro, app. 2.6)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Malachit	Vademecum
Marble	The natural grained, white rock (mainly consisting of calcite)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, raw material for the production of Solutio Silicea comp. (app. 2.6)	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/ Solutio Siliceae comp.; Marmor/Stibium; Solutio Silicea comp.	Vademecum: Marmor/ Stibium
Mercurius vivus naturalis	Naturally occurring mercury with 99.5-100.5% Hg	HAB; Ph.fr.	Hydrargyrum metallicum HAB; Mercurius vivus pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Glandula suprarenalis/Mercurius; Mercurius vivus; Mercurius vivus comp.; Mercurius vivus/ Eucaplyti aetheroleum; Thuja comp.	Vademecum
Meteoreisen	See Ferrum sidereum					
Nontronite	The natural mineral (complex iron silicate)	HAB	Nontronit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Nontronit	Vademecum
Olivenite	The natural mineral (basic copper arsenate; chem.: $Cu_2AsO_4(OH)$)	HAB	Olivenit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Olivenit; Senecio comp.	Vademecum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Olivine	See Chrysolite					
Onyx	A black-white striped variety of chalcedony (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)	HAB	Onyx	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Gnaphalium comp. ; Onyx	
Opal	The natural mineral (silicic acid, containing water)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2		Vademecum
Orthoclase	The natural mineral (potassium-aluminium silicate; chem.: $KAlSi_3O_8$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Orthoklas	
Pallasite	Stone-Iron-Meteorite (olivine crystals in an iron-nickel matrix)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Pharmacolite	The natural mineral	HAB	Pharmakolith	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pharmakolith comp.	Vademecum
Phosphorocalcite	The natural mineral (alkaline copper phosphate; chem.: $Cu_5[(OH)_4/(PO_4)_2]$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Platinum	The natural mineral (naturally occurring platinum with traces of other elements)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Basilicum comp.	
Pyrargyrite	The natural mineral (silver-antimony sulfide; chem.: Ag_3SbS_3)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Pyrite	The natural mineral (iron sulfide; chem.: FeS_2)	HAB	Pyrit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Anis-Pyrit ; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Pyrit; Pyrit/ Zinnober	Vademecum
Pyrolusite	The natural mineral (manganese dioxyde; chem.: MnO_2)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1; 4.1.2		
Pyromorphite	The natural mineral (lead phosphate; chem.: $Pb_5(PO_4)_3Cl$)	HAB	Pyromorphit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pyromorphit	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Quartz	The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)	HAB	Quarz	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API, raw material for the production of other chemical entities (app. 2.6)	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Argentum/Berberis comp.; Argentum/Quarz ; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Belladonna/Quarz ; Berberis/Quarz ; Cartilago/Echinacea comp. ; Conjunctiva comp.; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Endometrium comp.; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum/Quarz ; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Meteoreisen/Phosphor/Quarz; Nicotiana/Quarz ; Ovarium comp.; Oxalis/Quarz comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Primula comp. ; Quarz; Quarz/Resina Laricis; Quarz/Secale; Sanguinaria comp.; Silicea comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.; Tartarus stibiatus comp.	Vademecum
Realgar	The natural mineral (arsenic sulfide; chem.: As_4S_4)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Realgar	Vademecum
Rose quartz	The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2); syn.: Quarz rosae			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Rubellite	Pink to red tourmaline (complex silicate with aluminium, boron, fluorine, lithium, iron, sodium and other elements)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Rubellit
Ruby	The natural red corundum (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of Chromium)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Sal Maris	See Sea salt					
Sapphire	The natural blue mineral corundum (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of iron and/or titanium)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Scorodite	The natural mineral (basic iron arsenate; chem.: $FeAsO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$)	HAB	Skorodit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Borago comp.; Cerebellum comp. ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Skorodit; Skorodit comp.	Vademecum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Sea salt	Sea salt (chem.: complex mixture with chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components); syn.: Sal Maris	Ph.fr.	Natrum muriaticum naturale pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with water), API (in Sal Maris comp.)	Sal Maris comp.	
Seawater	Oceanic water (chem.: dissolved mixture of chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with ethanol 18%), 3.1.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Aqua Maris/Prunus spinosa, Summitates	Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Selenite	The natural mineral: Transparent, colourless, variety of gypsum (calcium sulfate; chem.: $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the production of Kalium chloratum comp.		
Siderite	The natural mineral (iron carbonate; chem.: $FeCO_3$)	HAB	Siderit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Avena/Conchae comp.; Siderit	Vademecum
Silex	See Flint					
Silicea naturale	See Quartz					
Smaragd	See Emerald					
Stibnite	The natural mineral (antimony sulfide; chem.: Sb_2S_3)	HAB	Antimonit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Antimonit ; Antimonit comp.; Antimonit/Anisum; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna; Vitis comp.	Vademecum: Antimonit
Succinum	See Amber					
Sulfur	see Sulfur aph (App. 2.4)				Sulfur	
Sylvite	The natural mineral (potassium chloride; chem.: KCl)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1		Vademecum: Sylvin
Terra medicinalis	Dried, finely-divided, naturally occurring clay and silt with a varied composition of aluminium oxide, silica, iron oxide and limestone; Terra medicinalis			Excipient	Placenta/Tropaeolum	
Thenardite	The natural mineral (sodium sulfate; chem.: Na_2SO_4)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with water), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Topaz	The natural mineral (aluminium-fluorine silicate; chem.: silicate of aluminium and fluorine, $Al_2[(F,OH)_2/SiO_4.)]$			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Trona	The natural mineral (sodium carbonate-hydrogen carbonate; chem.: $Na_3(CO_3)(HCO_3)\cdot 2H_2O$			raw material for the production of compositions, e.g. Solutio Silicea comp. (app. 2.6)	Aqua Maris comp.; Cinis Arnicae comp.; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	
Vivianite	The natural mineral (iron phosphate; chem.: $Fe_2(PO_4)_2\cdot 8H_2O$)	HAB	Vivianit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Gelsemium comp.; Levisticum comp.; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.; Vivianit	Vademecum
Witherite	The natural mineral (Barium carbonate; chem.: $BaCO_3$)	HAB	Witherit	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit	Vademecum
Zinnober	See Cinnabar					

APPENDIX 2.2

List of starting materials of botanical origin

Explanations

Name of the substance:	Title of the monograph (HAB/Ph.fr.: first name of the monograph, Ph.Eur.: Latin name of the monograph), or binomial name of the plant without author.
Reference to Standard:	A main reference and a reference in brackets [e.g. Ph.Eur. (HAB)]: The monograph in the Ph.Eur. is the standard, but the remnant monograph in the HAB contains supplementary details, e.g. preparation methods (other than Ph.Eur.). If no reference is given company monograph exists.
Preparation method:	Methods for processing the substance and for other uses The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Additional Information, see p. 17

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Abies alba	Fresh tops of Abies alba Mill.			HAB 33d	Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica	
Abies pectinata	Young, fresh, leafy branches of Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata DC)	Ph.fr.	Sapin Pectiné pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Abies species	see Piceae aetheroleum DAB					
Abrotanum	see Artemisia abrotanum					
Absinthium	see Artemisia absinthium					
Acetum Vini	Red wine vinegar, Vitis vinifera L.			Distillation (to get distilled red wine vinegar)		
Acetum Vini destillatum	Distilled red wine vinegar (acetum vini destillatum), Vitis vinifera L.			see App. 2.6 (Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Achillea millefolium	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.fr.	Millefolium PPH	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Achillea millefolium	Fresh, leaves of Achillea millefolium L., collected in Spring			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3	Millefolium / Hypericum	
Achillea millefolium	Fresh aerial parts of Achillea millefolium L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Achillea millefolium; Achillea millefolium ferm 33d	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33d	Cantharis comp.	
Achillea millefolium	Whole or cut, dried flowering tops of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.Eur.	Millefolii herba	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), API	Centaurium comp.; Cichorium/ Taraxacum comp.; Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis	
Achillea millefolium	Dried flowers of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph. Helv.	Millefolium Flos	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50 %), aqueous extraction together with other dried herbal drugs	Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Verbascum comp.	
Aconitum napellus	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Aconitum napellus L.	Ph.fr.	Aconitum napellus pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aconitum napellus	Fresh whole plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Aconitum napellus; Aconitum napellus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1	Aconitum napellus; Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./ Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Aconitum/Bryonia; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Aconitum napellus	Dried tubers of Aconitum napellus L.			HAB 12d, 12e, 12g	Aconitum napellus; Aconitum/Nicotiana comp.	
Aconitum napellus	Fresh underground parts of Aconitum napellus L.			HAB 33c	Aconitum comp.; Aconitum napellus; Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Aconitum/ China comp. ; Bryonia comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus/ Salix comp.	
Acorus calamus	Peeled, dried rhizome of Acorus calamus L., with roots and leaf residues removed.	HAB	Acorus calamus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8, 1.2.12, aqueous extraction together with other plants	Calamus, Rhizoma ; Gentiana/Zingiber comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Acorus calamus	Fresh underground parts of Acorus calamus L.			HAB 33d	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Bolus alba comp.	
Actaea racemosa	see Cimicifuga racemosa					
Actaea spicata	Fresh, underground parts of Actaea spicata L. collected after shots have emerged, but before flowering	HAB	Actaea spicata	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Adonis vernalis	Fresh aerial parts of Adonis vernalis L. collected during flowering	Ph.Eur.	Adonis vernalis aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.2.4	Adonis comp.; Adonis/Scilla comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis	
Aesculus hippocastanum	Fresh bark from younger branches of Aesculus hippocastanum L.			HAB 12k (Decoctum LA 10%)	Aesculus, Cortex; Calendula/Tropaeolum comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum	Fresh buds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.			For Sal maris comp. 1 part of buds is extracted with 2 parts of oil.	Sal Maris comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum	Freshly peeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	HAB	Aesculus hippocastanum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 12g, 34c	Aesculus, Semen; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago comp.; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Hirudo comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aesculus hippocastanum	Fresh unpeeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Ph.fr.	Aesculus hippocastanum pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Aesculus hippocastanum	Dried, whole or fragmented bark of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Ph.Eur.	Hippocastani cortex	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), see App. 2.7: Aesculus hippocastanum Cortex sicc., ethanol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	Aesculus, Cortex; Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Aesculus, Cortex/Rosmarini aetheroleum; Aesculus/Lavandula siccata ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.; Stibium comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum	Dried seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	DAB	Rosskastaniensamen, Hippocastani semen	HAB 12g, 12m	Aesculus, Semen; Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Agaricus bulbosus	see Amanita phalloides	Ph.Eur.				
Agaricus muscarius	see Amanita muscaria					
Agaricus muscarius	The red skin (cutis rubra) of the fruiting body of Amanita muscaria (L. ex Fr.) Hook.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%)		
Agaricus phalloides	see Amanita phalloides					
Agnus castus	see Vitex agnus-castus					
Agropyron repens	Whole or cut, washed and dried rhizome of Agropyron repens (L.) P. Beauv. (Elymus repens [L.] Gould); the adventitious roots are removed	Ph.Eur.	Graminis rhizoma	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Agropyron repens	see Elymus repens					
Alcea rosea	Dried, fully developed flowers with calices of Alcea rosea L. (Althaea rosea (L.) Cav.)			HAB 12g	Malva comp.	
Alfalfa	see Medicago sativa					
Allium cepa	Fresh bulbs of Allium cepa L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Allium cepa HAB; Allium cepa ferm. 34a; Allium cepa pph Ph.fr.	HAB Allium cepa (and Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3), HAB 34a, Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 45%) (Ph.fr.)	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Archangelica comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Cartilago comp. ; Cepa; Kastanien-Haartonikum; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.; Stannum/ Symphytum comp. ; Symphytum comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Allium sativum	Fresh bulb of Allium sativum L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.; USP	Allium sativum aph	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur.Hom. or HAB (and Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5)	Archangelica comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Allium ursinum	Fresh whole plants of Allium ursinum L. at the start of flowering	HAB	Allium ursinum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Aloe	Concentrated and dried juice of Aloe ferox Mill.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Aloe capensis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 4.1.1		
Althaea officinalis	Peeled or unpeeled, whole or cut, dried root of Althaea officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Althaeae root	aquous extract DER 1:8-12	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Amanita muscaria	Fresh fruiting bodies of Amanita muscaria (L.) Lam. Champignon (carpophore) entier, frais from Amanita muscaria (L. ex Fries) Hooker	HAB; Ph.fr.	Amanita muscaria HAB; Agaricus muscarius pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.11 (see monograph: ethanol 45%), HAB 33b	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Agaricus muscarius; Conchae comp.; Mygale comp.	
Amanita phalloides	Whole, fresh mushroom (fruiting body) Amanita phalloides (Vaill. ex Fr.) Link	Ph.Eur.	Amanita phalloides aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Ammi visnaga	Dried ripe fruits of Ammi visnaga (L.) Lam.	HAB	Ammi visnaga	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Ammi visnaga comp.	
Amygdalae amarae	see Prunus dulcis var. amara					
Amygdalae oleum virginale	Fatty oil otained by cold expression from the ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A. Webb var. dulcis or Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A. Webb var. amara (DC.) Buchheim or a mixture of both varieties	Ph.Eur.	Amygdalae oleum virginale	API (and excipient)	Oleum Petrae comp.	
Anacardium	see Semecarpus anacardium					
Anagallis arvensis	Fresh aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., collected at flowering	(HAB)	Anagallis arvensis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1, HAB 33b	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	
Anagallis arvensis	Dried aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., having been collected at flowering		Anagallis arvensis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Anamirta cocculus	Dried, ripe fruit of Anamirta cocculus (L.) Wight et. Arn. (syn. A. paniculata Colebr.)	Ph.Eur.	Anamirta cocculus aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.	
Ananas comosus	Freshly pressed juice of fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1	Resina Laricis comp.	
Ananas comosus	Fresh fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.			Maceration with ethanol 96% (Fruit: ethanol 96%: 4:1)	Ananassa comp. ; Resina Laricis comp.	
Angelica archangelica	Fresh roots and rhizomes of Angelica archangelica L.	HAB	Angelica archangelica, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11, HAB 33c	Archangelica ; Archangelica comp. ; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Angelica archangelica	Whole or cut, carefully dried rhizome and root of Angelica archangelica L. (syn. A. officinalis Hoffm.)	Ph.Eur.	Angelicae archangelicae radix	Ethanolic distillation together with other drugs	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Anhalonium	see Lophophora williamsii					
Anisi aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the dry ripe fruits of Pimpinella anisum L.	Ph.Eur.	Anisi aetheroleum	API	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Berberis/ Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Lichenes comp.	
Anisi stellati aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dry ripe fruits of Illicium verum Hook.f.	Ph.Eur.	Anisi stellati aetheroleum	API	Lichenes comp.	
Anisum	see Pimpinella anisum					
Anthyllis vulneraria	Fresh aerial parts of Anthyllis vulneraria L. at flowering			HAB 12c	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp.	
Apocynum cannabinum	Fresh underground parts of Apocynum cannabinum L.	HAB	Apocynum cannabinum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.9	Scilla comp.	
Aralia racemosa	Fresh underground parts of Aralia racemosa L.	HAB	Aralia racemosa	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Arctium lappa	Dried whole or cut roots of Arctium lappa L. (A. major Gaertn.), A. minus (Hill) Bernh. and A. tomentosum Mill. also related species or hybrids (Asteraceae), collected in autumn of the first year or spring of the second year	DAC	Klettenwurzel - Bardanae radix	HAB 12g	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp.	
Arctostaphylos uva-ursi	Whole or fragmented, dried leaves of Arctostaphylos uva-ursi (L.) Spreng.	Ph.Eur.	Uvae ursi folium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Uva ursi comp.	
Arisaema triphyllum	Fresh underground parts of Arisaemia triphyllum (L.) Torr., collected before the leaves develop.	HAB	Arisaema triphyllum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Armoracia rusticana	Fresh underground parts of Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gaertn., Mey. et Scherb.	Ph.fr.	Cochlearia armoracia pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), HAB 12a	Cochlearia armoracia	
Arnica montana	Fresh flower-heads of Arnica montana L.			HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Arnica, Flos ; Calendula/Urtica comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Arnica montana	Whole fresh flowering plants of Arnica montana L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Arnica montana ex planta tota; Arnica montana ex planta tota 3a; Arnica montana ex planta tota Rh HAB; Arnica (plante entière) PPH Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.4, 1.1.5, 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45% Ph.fr.), 1.5.1, HAB 12a, 33c. See also App. 2.7: Arnica montana 1:1,1	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Apis/Arnica; Arnica comp.; Arnica, Planta tota ; Arnica, Planta tota/Aurum ; Arnica, Planta tota/Cor ; Arnica, Planta tota/Equisetum arvense ; Arnica, Planta tota/Formica; Arnica, Planta tota/Vespa Crabro ; Arnica-Cerebrum ; Arnica/Betula comp. ; Arnica/Cactus comp.; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Formica comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Levisticum comp. ; Arnica/Plumbum mellitum; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Arnica/Urtica urens ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Cerebellum comp. ; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Disci comp. cum Aesc	
Arnica montana	Fresh underground parts of Arnica montana L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Apis comp.; Arnica	
Arnica montana	Whole or partially broken, dried flower-heads of Arnica montana L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Arnicae flos; Arnica montana e flore H 10% (HAB)	HAB 12d (olive oil), 12g	Apis/Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica, Flos ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Lotio Pruni comp.; Oleum lactagogum	
Arnica montana	Dried underground parts of Arnica montana L.	HAB	Arnica montana	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%); Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3/APC 4.3	Arnica ; Cinis Arnicae comp.	
Arnica montana	see Arnicae aetheroleum					
Arnicae aetheroleum	Volatile oil from the underground parts of Arnica montana L.			see App. 2.6 (Calcium silicicum comp.)		Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.
Artemisia abrotanum	Fresh young shoots and leaves of Artemisia abrotanum L. (HAB); Fresh, non-woody aerial part of Artemisia abrotanum L. (Ph.fr.)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Artemisia abrotanum HAB; Abrotanum pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65 %) HAB 33c	Abrotanum; Bolus alba comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Artemisia absinthium	Fresh upper shoots with attached leaves and flowers and basal leaves of Artemisia absinthium L. separately or as a mixture.	HAB	Artemisia absinthium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, Extraction with ethanol 36% (1:2.3)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Artemisia absinthium	Basal leaves or slightly leafy, flowering tops, or mixture of these dried, whole or cut organs of Artemisia absinthium L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Absinthii herba: Artemisia absinthium ex herba siccata, ethanol. Infusum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%), 1.4.4, Extraction with water (together with other herbal drugs)	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp.; Absinthium/Resina Laricis; Artemisia comp.; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Gentiana comp.; Gentiana/Zingiber comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Arum maculatum	Fresh underground parts of Arum maculatum L., collected before the leaves develop.	HAB	Arum maculatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.4	Arum maculatum/Pteridium aquilinum	
Arum triphyllum	see Arisaema triphyllum					
Asa foetida	see Ferula assa-foetida					
Asarum europaeum	Fresh underground parts of phenylpropane-containing subspecies of Asarum europaeum L.	HAB	Asarum europaeum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Asperula odorata	see Galium odoratum					
Aspidium filix-mas	see Dryopteris filix-mas					
Asplenium scolopendrium	see Phylitis scolopendrium					
Astragalus exscapus	Fresh flowering and in fruit rosettes of Astragalus exscapus L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		Vademecum: Astragalus exscapus
Atropa bella-donna	Fresh fruits of Atropa bella-donna L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6, HAB 33a	Apis/Belladonna; Apis/Belladonna/Mercurius; Belladonna; Belladonna / Rosae aetheroleum; Echinacea/Mercurius comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Atropa bella-donna	Whole, fresh, flowering plant of Atropa belladonna L., harvested at the end of flowering, with the ligneous base of the stems removed	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Atropa belladonna aph; Atropa bella-donna Rh HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), 1.5.1	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Apis/ Belladonna; Argentum comp.; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Belladonna; Belladonna/Betula/Formica ; Belladonna/Lens cristallina Columbae/ Resina Laricis; Belladonna/Oxalis ; Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Belladonna/ Quarz ; Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/ Gelsemium comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Chamomilla comp.; Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Oxalis comp.; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna; Zinnober comp.	
Atropa bella-donna	Fresh aerial parts of Atropa bella-donna L. without woody lower stem sections, collected at the beginning of flowering			HAB 33a	Ammi visnaga comp.; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Apis/Berberis comp.; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Belladonna; Belladonna /Rosae aetheroleum; Belladonna comp. ; Carum carvi comp.; Conjunctiva comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Lachesis comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Silicea comp.; Thyreoidea comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Atropa bella-donna	Fresh underground parts of Atropa bella-donna L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 33b	Aconitum comp.; Belladonna; Belladonna/Chamomilla; Bryonia/ Pulsatilla comp.; Viscum comp.	
Avena sativa	Whole fresh plants of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage	HAB	Avena sativa ferm 33c	HAB 33c	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Avena comp. ; Avena/Passiflora comp.	
Avena sativa	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage			Aqueous extract (with sucrose) 1:5 (see mon. KC)	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.	
Avena sativa	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected at flowering time	HAB; Ph.fr.	Avena sativa HAB; Avoine cultivée pph Ph.fr.; Avena sativa 2b	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.1, 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45 %)	Avena sativa; Avena sativa comp.	
Avena sativa	Germinated fruits of Avena sativa L.			APC 4.3	Cor/Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Avena sativa	Dried milled fruits of Avena sativa L.			API	Avena/Conchae comp.	
Balsamum peruvianum	Balsam obtained from the scorched and wounded trunk of Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms var. pereirae (Royle) Harms.	Ph.Eur.	Balsamum peruvianum	API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Calendula/ Mercurialis comp. ; Mercurialis comp.	
Bambusa	see Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens					
Belladonna	see Atropa bella-donna					
Bellis perennis	Whole fresh flowering plants of Bellis perennis L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Bellis perennis HAB; Bellis perennis pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Symphytum comp.	
Bellis perennis	Fresh aerial parts of Bellis perennis L. at flowering			HAB 12c	Bellis/Tropaeolum; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp.	
Benzoe	Resin obtained by incising the trunk of Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich	Ph.Eur.	Benzoe tonkinensis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Ceratum benzoinatum	
Berberis aquifolium	see Mahonia aquifolium					
Berberis vulgaris	Fresh aerial parts of Berberis vulgaris L. at flowering			HAB 33c	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Uterus comp.	
Berberis vulgaris	Fresh underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.4.3, HAB 33d	Apis/Berberis comp.; Berberis/ Hypericum comp. ; Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Berberis/ Sepia comp.; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Lycopodium comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Berberis vulgaris	Whole, fully ripened berries of Berberis vulgaris L. stripped off the fruit stalks	HAB	Berberis vulgaris e fructibus; Berberis vulgaris e fructibus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.4, 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Argentum/ Berberis comp.; Berberis e fructibus comp.; Berberis, Fructus; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Mercurialis perennis ; Berberis/Nicotiana comp. ; Berberis/Prunus ; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Berberis/Quarz ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Echinacea comp.; Echinacea/ Prunus comp.; Sambucus/Teucrium comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Berberis vulgaris	Fresh whole plant including berries of Berberis vulgaris L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1	Berberis, Planta tota/Urtica urens	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Berberis vulgaris	Dried bark of aerial and underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	HAB	Berberis vulgaris; Berberis vulgaris, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8, 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), 1.4.2	Apis comp.; Barium comp. ; Berberis, Cortex ; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba	
Berberis vulgaris	Dried bark of underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	Ph.fr.	Épine-vinette pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Berberis vulgaris	Dried underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.			HAB 12f	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp.	
Betonica	see Stachys officinalis					
Betula pendula	Fresh young leaves of Betula pendula Roth.	HAB	Betula pendula e foliis; Betula pendula e foliis e ferm 34e	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.2, HAB 34e	Belladonna/Betula/Formica ; Betula, Folium; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Betula/ Juniperus ; Cartilago comp. ; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Mandragora comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Betula pendula	Dried parts only of white bark from trunk and branches of Betula pendula Roth	HAB	Betula pendula ex cortice, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Arnica/Betula comp. ; Arnica/Epiphysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/ Formica comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Betula comp.; Betula, Cortex ; Betula/Mandragora comp.; Retina/Secale comp.	
Betula pendula, Betula pubescens	Whole or fragmented dried leaves of Betula pendula Roth and /or Betula pubescens Ehrh., as well as hybrids of both species.	Ph.Eur.	Betulae folium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), HAB 12g	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Betula, Folium; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Mandragora comp.; Medulla spinalis comp.; Oleum lactagogum	
Betula pendula, Betula pubescens	Carbon obtained from wood of Betula pendula Roth or B. pubescens Ehrh.	HAB	Carbo vegetabilis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 see app. 2.7	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Betulae; Carbo Betulae cum Methano ; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Carbo Betulae/Crataegus ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur ; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Pancreas/ Platinum chloratum comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Boldo	see Peumus boldus					
Borago officinalis	Fresh leaves of Borago officinalis L.	(HAB 1924)	Borrago officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.4, HAB 34b	Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago; Borago comp.; Borago/Renes comp. ; Quercus comp.	
Borago officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Borago officinalis L. at flowering			HAB 12a, 12c	Borago	
Boswellia species	see Olibanum					
Brassica nigra	Ripe dried seeds of Brassica nigra (L.) Koch	DAC	Schwarze Senfsamen - Sinapis nigrae Semen	HAB 12f	Aesculus/Cera comp.	
Bryonia cretica	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin, harvested before shoots are produced	HAB	Bryonia cretica ferm. 33b	HAB 33b	Aconitum/China comp. ; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Bryonia ; Bryonia comp.; Bryonia/Pulsatilla comp.; Bryonia/Stannum ; Bryonia/Viscum comp.; Gelsemium comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Pulmo/ Vivianit comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Bryonia cretica, Bryonia alba	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin or Bryonia alba L., harvested before flowering	Ph.Eur.	Bryonia aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Aconitum/ Bryonia; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Bryonia ; Bryonia/ Eupatorium comp.; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Echinacea/ Prunus comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Bryophyllum daigremontianum & Bryophyllum pinnatum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger and Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Bryophyllum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 30 %), 33b	Bryophyllum ; Bryophyllum comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Ignatia comp.	
Bryophyllum pinnatum	Fresh pressed juice from leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	(HAB)	Bryophyllum	APC 5.2.1	Bryophyllum	Vademecum 4. Auflage (2017): Bryophyllum 50%/ Conchae 50% aa

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Bryophyllum pinnatum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken, harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Bryophyllum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1, see also App. 2.7: Bryophyllum pinnata 1:1,1	Bryophyllum ; Bryophyllum/Conchae	
Buxus sempervirens	Fresh, young leafy branches of Buxus sempervirens L.	Ph.fr.	Buxus sempervirens aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Cactus grandiflorus	see Selenicereus grandiflorus					
Cajeputi aetheroleum	Rectified essential oil obtained from fresh leaves and branches of Melaleuca cajuputi Powell or Melaleuca leucadendra (L.) L.			API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica	
Calamus	see Acorus calamus					
Calendula officinalis	Fresh flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.			HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula ; Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Calendula officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Calendula officinalis; Calendula officinalis 2a	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.5; HAB 33c, expressing the juice	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Arnica/ Echinacea comp. ; Calendula ; Calendula comp. ; Calendula Presssaft/Echinacea; Calendula/Echinacea purpurea ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Calendula/Stibium ; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis/ Stibium comp.; Symphytum comp.	
Calendula officinalis	Dried flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.			HAB 12f, 57	Calendula ; Euphrasia comp.; Oleum rhinale	
Calendula officinalis	Whole or cut, dried, and fully opened flowers that have been detached from the receptacle of the cultivated, double-flowered varieties of Calendula officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Calendulae flos		Calendula	
Calendula officinalis	Dried aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time			HAB 12 d, extraction with oil together with other starting materials (1.2:10)	Apis/Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./ Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Oleum lactagogum	
Campanula rotundifolia	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of Campanula rotundifolia L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Capsella bursa-pastoris	Dried aerial parts of Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Medik, collected at flowering time	HAB	Capsella bursa-pastoris; Capsella bursa-pastoris, ethanol Infusum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)	Capsella bursa-pastoris ; Capsella/ Majorana comp. ; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Hydrastis comp.	
Capsicum annuum	Dried ripe fruits of Capsicum annuum L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Capsicum annuum HAB; Capsicum annuum aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Capsicum annuum ; Kastanien-Haartonikum	
Caramel	see Saccharum officinarum					
Caramel	Caramel obtained through the roasting of sucrose from Saccharum officinarum L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with purified water), 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 4.1.1 (together with Anisi fructus)	Anis-Pyrit ; Basilicum comp.; Crataegus/ Ferrum sidereum/Saccharum tostum	
Carapichea ipecacuanha	see Cephaelis ipecacuanha, Cephaelis acuminata					
Carduus benedictus	see Cnicus benedictus					
Carduus marianus	see Silybum marianum					
Carex arenaria	Dried rhizome of Carex arenaria L., collected in spring			App. 2.7: Carex arenaria, ethanol. Decoctum 1:4		Soldner / Stellmann (2011), Individuelle Pädiatrie, p. 190-198
Carum carvi	Whole, dry mericarp of Carum carvi L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Carvi fructus; Carum carvi HAB; Carum carvi, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), aqueous extract 1.8:1, extract with ethanol 36%, API, APC 4.2	Artemisia comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Carum carvi; Carum carvi comp.; Centaurium comp.	
Carum carvi	see Carvi aetheroleum			08.04.2024 René / Neuer Verweis -> Stand 5 12.04.2024/Melanie: Kontrolle durchgeführt > Stand 6/PP: Freigabe		
Carvi aetheroleum	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the dry fruits of Carum carvi L.	Ph.Eur.	Carvi aetheroleum	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Melissa comp.; Oleum lactagogum; Tropaeolum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Caryophylli floris aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dried flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison)	Ph.Eur.	Caryophylli floris aetheroleum	API	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Caryophyllus	see Syzygium aromaticum					
Cassia angustifolia, Cassia senna	Dried leaflets of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile), known as Alexandrian or Khartoum senna, or Cassia angustifolia Vahl., known as Tinnevelly senna, or a mixture of the 2 species.	Ph.Eur.	Sennae folium	API	Centaurium comp.	
Cassia senna	Dried fruit of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile)	Ph.Eur.	Sennae fructus acutifoliae	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Artemisia comp.	
Caulophyllum thalictroides	Fresh underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx., harvested in late summer	HAB	Caulophyllum thalictroides	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Caulophyllum thalictroides	Dried underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michaux.	Ph.fr.	Caulophyllum thalictroides aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Ceanothus americanus	Dried leaves of Ceanothus americanus L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ceanothus americanus HAB; Céanothe d'amérique sec pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Ceanothus americanus	Dried leaves of Ceanothus americanus L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ceanothus americanus HAB; Céanothe d'amérique sec pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Centaurium erythraea	Fresh aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn.			Ph. Eur. 1.1.4, ethanolic extract 1:2.3 (ethanol 36%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn s. l. including C. majus (H. et L.) Zeltner and C. suffruticosum (Griseb.) Ronn. (syn.: Erythraea centaurium Persoon; C. umbellatum Gilibert; C. minus Gars.)	Ph.Eur.	Centaurii herba	API	Centaurium comp.	
Centella asiatica	Dried, whole plant of Centella asiatica (L.) Urban (Hydrocotyle asiatica L.)	Ph.fr.	Hydrocotyle asiatica pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Cepa	see Allium cepa					
Cephaelis ipecacuanha	see Psychotria ipecacuanha					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cephaelis ipecacuanha, Cephaelis acuminata	Fragmented and dried underground organs of Carapichea ipecacuanha (Brot.) L. Andersson (syn. Cephaëlis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich.; Cephaëlis acuminata H. Karst.) from Mato Grosso or Costa Rica. The principal alkaloids are emetine and cephaeline	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Ipecacuanhae radix; Ipéca pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Cetraria islandica	Whole or cut, dried thallus of Cetraria islandica (L.) Acharius s.l.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Lichen islandicus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), aqueous extract	Cetraria islandica; Lichenes comp.; Verbascum comp.	
Chamomilla recutita	see Matricaria recutita					
Chelidonium majus	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots	HAB	Chelidonium majus; Chelidonium majus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, HAB 34b	Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Berberis/ Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium; Chelidonium comp.; Chelidonium/ Colocynthis ; Chelidonium/Curcuma; Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Colchicum comp.	
Chelidonium majus	Fresh flowers of Chelidonium majus L.	HAB	Chelidonium majus e floribus, ethanol. Digestio	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.3	Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium; Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Colchicum/ Chelidonium; Colchicum/Spongia comp.	
Chelidonium majus	Fresh aerial parts of Chelidonium majus L., collected at flowering time			HAB 34b	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium; Chelidonium/Colocynthis ; Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.	
Chelidonium majus	Fresh whole flowering plants of Chelidonium majus L.	Ph.fr.	Chelidonium majus pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Chelidonium majus	Whole flowering plant, including the root of Chelidonium majus L.	Ph.Hom.Br.	Chelidonium	Ph.Hom.Br. 10.1, ethanol content 45%		ABMA-Vademecum
Chimaphila umbellata	Dried aerial parts of Chimaphila umbellata (L.) Barton	Ph.fr.	Chimaphila umbellata pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
China	see Cinchona pubescens					
Chlorophyceae (class), Cladophora or Oedogonium (genera)	Fresh thalli of algae from the genus Cladophora or Oedogonium or other genera of filamentous organised green algae from the class Chlorophyceae.			HAB 33e	Argentum nitricum comp.	
Chrysosplenium alternifolium	Whole fresh plants of Chrysosplenium alternifolium L.			HAB 33b	Chrysosplenium comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cichorium intybus	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L.	HAB	Cichorium intybus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1, HAB 33c; extract with ethanol (36 %) 1:2.3	Anagallis comp.; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chrysosplenium comp.; Cichorium; Cichorium Plumbo cultum; Cichorium Stanno cultum; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Lien comp.; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.	
Cichorium intybus	Dried whole plants of Cichorium intybus L. var. intybus and Cichorium intybus L. var. sativum DC, collected at flowering time. The tough middle stem sections are not used.	HAB	Cichorium intybus, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), APC 4.2, 4.3	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Basilicum comp.; Cichorium; Cichorium comp.	
Cimicifuga racemosa	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Cimifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.	HAB	Cimicifuga racemosa; Cimicifuga racemosa, ethanol. Decocctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.9, HAB 33c	Cimicifuga comp. ; Cimicifuga racemosa	
Cinchona pubescens	Whole or cut, dried bark of Cinchona pubescens Vahl (Cinchona succirubra Pav.), of Cinchona calisaya Wedd., of Cinchona ledgeriana Moens ex Trimen or of their varieties or hybrids.	Ph.Eur.	Cinchonae cortex	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Aconitum/China comp. ; Drosera/ Ipecacuanha comp.	
Cineraria maritima	see Senecio bicolor					
Cinnamomum verum	Dried bark, freed from the outer cork and the underlying parenchyma, of the shoots grown on cut stock of Cinnamomum verum J. S. Presl.	Ph.Eur.	Cinnamomi cortex	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%); distillation	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Cissus gongylodes	Fresh aerial roots of Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7	Cissus-Ossa	
Citrullus colocynthis	Dried pulp of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds	Ph.fr.	Colocynthis pph	Ph..Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Citrullus colocynthis	Fresh peeled unripe fruit of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds			HAB 33a	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium/Colocynthis ; Colocynthis	
Citrullus colocynthis	Dried peeled fruit of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds	HAB	Citrullus colocynthis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)	Colocynthis	
Citrus limon	Pressed juice from the fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.			API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Citrus/ Cydonia; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Lotio Pruni comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Citrus limon	Fresh fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.			HAB 33c, API, see also App. 2.7: Citrus limon, Fruct. rec. 1:0.41	Citrus/Cydonia	
Citrus limon	see Limonis aetheroleum					
Citrus medica	see Citrus limon					
Cladina rangiferina	Dried thallus of Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl. (Cladonia rangiferina (L.) Web.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); extraction with water (together with other ingredients)	Lichenes comp.	
Cladonia rangiferina	see Cladina rangiferina					
Claviceps purpurea	Sclerotium of Claviceps purpurea (Fr.) Tul., grown on rye plants (Secale cereale L.) and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40 °C	HAB	Secale cornutum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (Ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Argentum/Secale ; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Hydrastis comp.; Quarz/Secale; Retina/Secale comp.	
Clematis recta	Fresh, young leafy branches of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.	Clematis erecta pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Clematis recta	Fresh aerial parts of of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Clematis recta	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		Vademecum: Clematis recta
Cnicus benedictus	Fresh aerial parts of Cnicus benedictus L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Cnicus benedictus; Cnicus Benedictus, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.2.11, HAB 33d	Borago comp.; Carduus benedictus/ Paeonia officinalis	
Cocculus	see Anamirta cocculus					
Cochlearia armoracia	see Armoracia rusticana					
Cochlearia officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the start of flowering time	HAB	Cochlearia officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), 1.5.1, HAB 33b	Basilicum comp.; Cochlearia officinalis; Tormentilla comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Cochlearia officinalis	Dried aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the beginning of the flowering time			API	Cochlearia officinalis; Levisticum comp.	
Coffea arabica	Dried, roasted seeds of Coffea arabica L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 18%)	Avena sativa comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Zincum valerianicum comp.	
Coffea arabica	Ripe, dried, unroasted seeds of Coffea arabica L. with the seed coat (silver skin) largely removed	HAB	Coffea arabica	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), Ph.Helv.17.7.4.2/APC 4.2		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Colchicum autumnale	Fresh corms of Colchicum autumnale L., collected at flowering time and free from fibrous roots	HAB	Colchicum autumnale, ethanol. Digestio; Colchicum autumnale Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.4, 1.5.1	Apis comp.; Colchicum; Colchicum comp.; Colchicum/Sabina; Colchicum/ Spongia comp.	
Colchicum autumnale	Fresh whole, flowering plant of Colchicum autumnale L.			HAB 34c	Colchicum; Colchicum/Chelidonium	
Colocynthis	see Citrullus colocynthis					
Commiphora species	see Myrrha					
Conium maculatum	Fresh flowerheads of Conium maculatum L., collected at the end of flowering time	Ph.fr.	Conium maculatum pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Conium maculatum	Fresh, aerial parts of the flowering, but not yet fruiting specimens of Conium maculatum L.	HAB	Conium maculatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3	Conium maculatum	
Convallaria majalis	Fresh aerial parts of Convallaria majalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Convallaria majalis; Convallaria majalis, ethanol. Digestio	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.3	Convallaria; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria; Scilla comp.	
Convallaria majalis	Fresh whole, flowering plants of Convallaria majalis L.			HAB 33c	Adonis/Scilla comp.; Convallaria/ Primula comp.	
Convallaria majalis	Fresh flowers with pedicels of Convallaria majalis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7 with extension: during the prescribed maceration time the mixture is exposed for 3 days to sunlight filtered through a saturated solution of alum.	Convallaria	
Coriandrum sativum	Dried cremocarp of Coriandrium sativum L.	Ph.Eur.	Coriandri fructus	Distillation (together with other ingredients)	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Crataegus laevigata, Crataegus monogyna	Fresh leaves and ripe fruit of Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC. and Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindman			HAB 33d	Adonis comp.; Adonis/Scilla comp.; Arnica/Cactus comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Cor/ Crataegus comp.; Crataegus; Crataegus/ Viscum ; Passiflora comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Crataegus laevigata, Crataegus monogyna	Fresh ripe fruits of Crataegus laevigata (Poir) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. and their hybrids, also mixtures thereof	HAB	Crataegus; Crataegus, ethanol. Digestio	See Monograph HAB (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3), Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.4, 1.2.5; aqueous extract with sucrose and citric acid (3:4.95:2:0.05)	Aurum/Crataegus; Cactus/Crataegus ; Cactus/Crataegus comp.; Cactus/ Magnesium phosphoricum ; Carbo Betulae/Crataegus ; Crataegus; Crataegus comp. ; Crataegus/Ferrum sidereum/ Saccharum tostum; Crataegus/Kalmia; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Hypericum/ Passiflora comp.; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria	
Crataegus laevigata, Crataegus monogyna	Whole or fragmented, dried flower-bearing branches of Crataegus monogyna Jacq. (Lindm.), C. laevigata (Poir.) DC. or their hybrids or, more rarely C. pentagyna Waldst. et Kit. ex Willd. or C. azarolus L. These species may be mixed.	Ph.Eur.	Crataegi folium cum flore	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13	Crataegus	
Crataegus laevigata, Crataegus monogyna	Dried leaves of Crataegus monogyna Jacq. (Lindm.), or Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC. or other European Crataegus species			Extraction with ethanol 36% (DER 1:1.5-2.5)	Crataegus	
Crocus sativus	Dried stigmas of Crocus sativa L., usually joined by the base to a short style.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Croci sativi stigma aph; Crocus sativus HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90% acc. to HAB), 1.1.10 (ethanol 80%); ethanolic extract 1:20 (see App. 2.6: Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Cucurbita maxima	Dried pulp of pumpkins of Cucurbita maxima Duch.			API		Vademecum: Chelidonium/Curcuma comp.
Cucurbita pepo	Fresh flowers of Cucurbita pepo L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 4.2.1	Apatit/Conchae; Apatit/Phosphorus comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.	
Curcuma zanthorrhiza	Dried rhizome, cut in slices, of Cucurma zanthorrhiza Roxb. (syn. C. zanthorrhiza D. Dietrich).	Ph.Eur.	Curcumae zanthorrhizae rhizoma	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), also API	Chelidonium/Curcuma	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cydonia oblonga	Fresh ripe fruits of Cydonia oblonga Mill.	APC	Cydonia oblonga, fruit; Cydonia oblonga, fruit, heat treated aqueous tincture 1:2.1; Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1; Cydonia oblonga, fruit, mother tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold; Cydonia oblonga e fructibus ferm 33b	extract according to monographs APC, HAB 33b	Citrus/Cydonia; Cydonia, Fructus; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Cymbopogon winterianus	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh or partially dried aerial parts of Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt.	Ph.Eur.	Citronellae aetheroleum	HAB 12h	Citronellae aetheroleum; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Cynara scolymus	Fresh leaves of Cynara scolymus L.	Ph.fr.	Cynara scolymus pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Cytisus scoparius	Fresh young tips of shoots of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link. with flowers and leaves	Ph.fr.	Genista scoparia pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Cytisus scoparius	Fresh aerial parts of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link at flowering time			HAB 33c	Sarothamnus comp.; Scilla comp.	
Daphne mezereum	Fresh bark from the branches of Daphne mezereum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Daphne mezereum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Mezereum	
Datura stramonium	Fresh aerial parts of Datura stramonium L., collected at flowering time	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Datura stramonium aph; Datura stramonium aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 45%), 1.5.1	Mygale comp.; Stramonium	
Delphinium staphisagria	Dried ripe seed of Delphinium staphisagria L.	Ph.Eur.	Delphinium staphisagria aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Digitalis purpurea	Fresh leaf of Digitalis purpurea L., collected just before or during flowering	Ph.Eur.	Digitalis purpurea aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.2.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Digitalis purpurea	
Dolichos pruriens	see Mucuna pruriens					
Drosera rotundifolia, Drosera intermedia, Drosera anglica	Whole fresh plants of Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne and Drosera anglica Huds., single species or mixed, collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Drosera	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, HAB 33c	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Plantago comp.; Sirupus Thymi comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Drosera rotundifolia, Drosera intermedia, Drosera anglica	Whole dried plants of different Drosera species, mainly Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera anglica Huds. (D. longifolia L.), Drosera intermedia Hayne, Drosera madagascariensis DC, Drosera peltata Sm, Drosera ramentacea Burch. ex harv. et Sond., single species or mixed	Ph.fr.	Drosera aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Dryopteris filix-mas	Fresh rhizome of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott, with roots			HAB 33c	Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Dryopteris filix-mas	Fresh aerial parts of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.			APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.	
Dryopteris filix-mas	Ripe spores of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus	
Dulcamara	see Solanum dulcamara					
Echinacea angustifolia	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC. (Rudbeckia angustifolia L.)	HAB	Echinacea HAB; Echinacea angustifolia pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Argentum/Echinacea; Argentum/ Quercus comp. ; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Chamomilla comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea comp.	
Echinacea angustifolia, Echinacea pallida	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC. and Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., single species or mixed	HAB	Echinacea	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Argentum/Echinacea; Calendula Presssaft/Echinacea; Euphrasia comp.	
Echinacea pallida	Fresh flowering plants of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	HAB	Echinacea	HAB 33c	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Cartilago/ Echinacea comp. ; Conjunctiva comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Rosae aetheroleum; Echinacea/Viscum; Endometrium comp.; Majorana/Thuja comp.	
Echinacea pallida	Fresh aerial parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., collected at flowering time			HAB 12c	Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea; Echinacea/Viscum comp.	
Echinacea pallida	Fresh underground parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.			HAB 33d	Argentum/Echinacea; Echinacea/ Mercurius comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Echinacea purpurea	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	HAB	Echinacea purpurea ex planta tota	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6	Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/ Echinacea purpurea ; Chamomilla comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea/Prunus comp.	
Echinacea purpurea	Fresh flowers of Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Echinacea	
Elymus repens	Fresh underground parts of Elymus repens (L.) Gould	HAB	Elymus repens	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Agropyron comp.	
Equisetum arvense	Fresh, green, sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L.	HAB	Equisetum arvense Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 12c, 35b, see app. 2.7	Arnica, Planta tota/Equisetum arvense ; Aurum/Equisetum ; Cantharis comp. ; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/ Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum arvense; Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum; Equisetum arvense/Formica; Equisetum/Stannum ; Mandragora comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Equisetum arvense	Whole or cut, dried sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Equiseti herba; Equisetum arvense, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12, HAB 12d, 12g, extraction with glycerol, APC 4.2, 4.3	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Carbo Equiseti arvensis; Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit ; Equisetum arvense; Equisetum arvense/ Formica; Equisetum arvense/Tabacum; Equisetum comp.; Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum; Equisetum/Pancreas; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Equisetum/ Stannum ; Equisetum/Viscum; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lien comp.; Mandragora comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Equisetum arvense	Fresh, green, sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L. harvested in autum			APC 3.7.5		
Equisetum arvense	Fresh, fertile shoots of Equisetum arvense L. harvested in spring			APC 3.7.5		
Equisetum fluviatile	see Equisetum limosum					
Equisetum limosum	Fresh aerial parts of Equisetum limosum L.			Starting material for the preparation of Equisetum limosum-Rubellit (app. 2.6)		Soldner/ Stellmann (2011) Individuelle Pädiatrie

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Erythraea centaurium	see Centaurium erythraea					
Eschscholzia californica	Whole fresh flowering plants of Eschscholzia californica Cham.	Ph.fr.	Eschscholzia californica pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Eucalypti aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation and rectification from the fresh leaves or the fresh terminal branchlets of various species of Eucalyptus rich in 1,8-cineole. The species mainly used are Eucalyptus globulus Labill., Eucalyptus polybractea R.T.Baker and Eucalyptus smithii R.T.Baker.	Ph.Eur.	Eucalypti aetheroleum	API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Eucalypti aetheroleum; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Mercurius vivus/ Eucaplyti aetheroleum; Oleum camphoratum comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Eucalyptus globulus	Fresh leaves of Eucalyptus globulus Labill.			HAB 33d	Aconitum/China comp. ; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Cuprum sulfuricum/Eucalyptus	
Eucalyptus globulus	Whole or cut, dried leaves of older branches of Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Eucalypti folium; Eucalyptus globulus HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)	Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/ Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Eucalyptus globulus	see Eucalypti aetheroleum					
Eugenia caryophyllata	see Syzygium aromaticum					
Eupatorium cannabinum	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Eupatorium cannabinum L.			HAB 33c	Aconitum/China comp. ; Bronchi/ Plantago comp.	
Eupatorium perfoliatum	Fresh aerial parts of Eupatorium perfoliatum L., collected at start of flowering	HAB; Ph.fr.	Eupatorium perfoliatum HAB; Eupatorium perfoliatum pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Euphrasia stricta and Euphrasia officinalis	Whole fresh plants of Euphrasia stricta Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and Euphrasia officinalis L. subsp. rostkoviana (Hayne) Towns, their hybrids and mixtures thereof, collected at flowering time	HAB	Euphrasia; Euphrasia 3c; Euphrasia ferm 33c	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.7 (HAB 3c), 33c	Euphrasia; Euphrasia comp.; Euphrasia/ Rosae aetheroleum	
Euphrasia stricta and Euphrasia officinalis	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Euphrasia stricta D. Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and/or Euphrasia rostkoviana Hayne and/or their hybrids and/or their mixtures	Ph.fr.	Euphrasia officinalis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)

		to Standard			KC Monograph	Other
	Branch and trunk wood of Fagus sylvatica L.			Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3 (APC 4.3); raw material for the preparation of Kalium carbonicum e Fagi (app. 2.4)	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.	
da	Dried gum resin from Ferula species such as Ferula assa-foetida L. and Ferula foetida (Bunge) Regel. (Asa foetida)	HAB	Asa foetida	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
aria	Fresh aerial parts of Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim. collected at floweing time.	HAB	Filipendula ulmaria; Filipendula ulmaria ferm 34c	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 34c	Betula/Mandragora comp.	
	see Dryopteris filix-mas					
fructus	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe fruits of Foeniculum vulgare Miller ssp. vulgare var. vulgare.	Ph.Eur.	Foeniculi amari fructus aetheroleum	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Melissa comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
gare	Dried cremocarps and mericarps of Foeniculum vulgare Mill. sp. vulgare var. vulgare	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Foeniculi amari fructus; Foeniculum vulgare, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), API	Species Carvi comp.	
gare	see Foeniculi amari fructus aetheroleum					
	Fresh, ripe false-fruits of Fragaria vesca L			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, extract with ethanol (66% m/m) and sucrose 3:2 (DER 1:0.9)	Aqua Maris comp.; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Fragaria/Urtica/ Gentiana; Levisticum comp.	
	Dried, whole or cut leaves, collected at flowering time of Fragaria vesca L., Fragaria moschata West., Fragaria viridis West., Fragaria x ananassa (Duch.) Guedes (Rosaceae), their hybrids as well as hybrids with other Fragaria species or mixtures of them	DAC	Erdbeerblätter - Fragariae folium	API	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Fragaria/ Urtica comp.; Fragaria/Vitis; Vitis comp.	
	see Rhamnus frangula					
us	Fresh thallus of Fucus vesiculosus L.	Ph.fr.	Fucus vesiculosus pph	HAB 51	Tropaeolum comp.	
alis	Fresh aerial parts of Fumaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Fumaria officinalis	HAB 1.1.3, 33c	Tropaeolum comp.	Vademecu see Hippoc
is L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Galanthus nivalis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6		Vademecu Hippocam

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Gallae turcicae	Oak apples produced on young shoots of Quercus infectoria Olivier by the sting of the dyers gall wasp Andricus gallae tinctoriae Olivier	HAB	Gallae turcicae	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Gelsemium sempervirens	Fresh underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	HAB	Gelsemium sempervirens; Gelsemium sempervirens, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.9, HAB 35b	Apis comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Gelsemium; Oxalis comp.	
Gelsemium sempervirens	Dried underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.12 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Gelsemium; Gelsemium comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Genista scoparia	see Cytisus scoparius					
Gentiana lutea	Fresh underground parts of Gentiana lutea L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Gentiana lutea; Gentiana lutea, ethanol. Decoctum; Gentiana lutea Rh; Gentiana lutea PPH (Ph.fr)	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), 1.2.10, 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Bolus alba comp.; Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Gentiana lutea ; Nux vomica comp.	
Gentiana lutea	Dried, fragmented underground organs of Gentiana lutea L.	Ph.Eur.	Gentianae radix	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.4.3, aqueous extract, APC 4.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Fragaria/Urtica/ Gentiana; Gentiana comp.; Gentiana/ Zingiber comp.	
Geraniaceae	see Pelargonium species					
Geranii aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from the aerial parts of suitable species of Pelargonium e.g. Pelargonium graveolens Ait.			API	Malva comp.; Rosae aetheroleum/Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Geum urbanum	Fresh underground parts of Geum urbanum L.	HAB	Geum urbanum e rhizomate recente, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11, 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Artemisia comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Geum urbanum	
Ginkgo biloba	Fresh leaves of Ginkgo biloba L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ginkgo biloba HAB; Ginkgo biloba PPH Ph.Fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (Ethanol 65%)		
Ginseng	see Panax ginseng					
Glechoma hederacea	Dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.			Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3 (APC 4.3)	Cinis Glechomatis	
Gnaphalium	see Leontopodium alpinum					
Gossypium herbaceum	Dried seeds, devoid of fibres, of Gossypium herbaceum L. or G. hirsutum L.	Ayurvedic Pharmacopoe ia of India	Karpasa	Maceration 1:3 with ethanol 73% m/m (80% V/V)		ABMA-Vademecum
Hamamelis virginiana	Fresh bark and leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.			HAB 12c (bark:leaves 1:9)	Hamamelis	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hamamelis virginiana	Fresh bark from roots and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis virginiana	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33e	Hamamelis	
Hamamelis virginiana	Fresh leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis virginiana e foliis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, HAB 33d	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago comp.; Hamamelis; Quercus comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana	Fresh flowering branches of Hamamelis virginiana L., collected in late autumn	HAB 34	Hamamelis-Extrakt	HAB 52	Hamamelis comp.; Hamamelis destillata	
Hamamelis virginiana	Dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis virginiana, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Hamamelis; Hydrastis comp.; Symphytum comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana	Dried leaves and dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.			Distillate with ethanol 12 % (1 part ethanol 96 %, 8.7 parts water)(DER 1:15)	Lotio Pruni comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana	Whole or cut, dried leaf of Hamamelis virginiana L.	Ph.Eur.	Hamamelidis folium	Extract with ethanol 36 % (DER 1:1)	Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Calendula comp. ; Stibium comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana	Fresh bark from branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.			HAB 33e	Hirudo comp.	
Harpagophytum procumbens	Cut and dried, tuberous secondary roots of Harpagophytum procumbens (Burch.) DC. and/or Harpagophytum zeyheri Decne.	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Harpagophyti radix; Harpagophytum PPH	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 35b	Harpagophytum, Radix	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Helianthus tuberosus	Fresh tubers of Helianthus tuberosus L., collected in late autumn	HAB	Helianthus tuberosus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Helleborus foetidus	Leaves and roots collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of Helleborus foetidus L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.3.1, see also app. 2.6 (Helleborus foetidus)		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 565
Helleborus niger	Fresh whole flowering plants of Helleborus niger L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, HAB 34c; fermentated, aqueous extract	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Helleborus niger	
Helleborus niger	Fresh whole plants of Helleborus niger L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Helleborus niger	
Helleborus niger	Whole fresh plant collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of Helleborus niger L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.3.1; see also app. 2.6 (Helleborus niger)		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 500-566
Helonias dioica	see Chamaelirium luteum					
Hippophaë rhamnoides	Fresh fruits of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.			pressing to obtain the juice (=API)		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hippophaë rhamnoides	Fatty oil obtained from the seeds and/or fruit of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.			API		
Hordeum vulgare	Extract obtained from dried germinated fruits of Hordeum vulgare L. (malt)			conventional method for making malt	Avena/Conchae comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Humulus lupulus	Fresh bines with leaves and hop cones of Humulus lupulus L.	HAB	Humulus lupulus ferm 34d	HAB 34d; extract with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Avena/Passiflora comp.; Hypericum/ Passiflora comp.	
Humulus lupulus	Fresh, ripe female inflorescences of Humulus lupulus L., containing as few seeds as possible	HAB	Humulus lupulus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Avena sativa comp.	
Hydrastis canadensis	Whole or cut, dried rhizome and root of Hydrastis canadensis L.	Ph.Eur.	Hydrastis canadensis aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65% for 3-5 weeks)	Calendula comp. ; Echinacea comp.; Hydrastis canadensis; Hydrastis comp.; Lilium tigrinum comp.	
Hydrocotyle asiatica	see Centella asiatica					
Hyoscyamus niger	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Hyoscyamus niger L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1, HAB 33d	Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Aurum/ Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Hyoscyamus; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./ Plumbum ; Onopordum/Primula comp.; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo ; Primula comp.	
Hyoscyamus niger	Whole, fresh flowering plant of Hyoscyamus niger L.	Ph.Eur.	Hyoscyamus niger aph	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur.Hom. or HAB: Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3	Argentum/Hyoscyamus ; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Aurum/Hyoscyamus comp. ; Hyoscyamus; Hyoscyamus/ Valeriana	
Hypericum perforatum	Fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum L.			see App. 2.7: Hypericum perforatum; Flos; Extr. oleos 1:2	Hypericum; Millefolium / Hypericum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hypericum perforatum	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Hypericum perforatum Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Berberis/ Hypericum comp. ; Camphora/ Hypericum ; Hypericum; Hypericum Auro cultum; Hypericum comp.; Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Levico comp.; Malva comp.; Primula comp.	
Hypericum perforatum	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., without stem collected at flowering time	HAB	Hypericum perforatum ex herba	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Hypogymnia physodes	Dried thallus of Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl. (Parmelia physodes (L.) Ach.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		Der Merkurstab 2010(63(1): 4-21 Vademecum; Lac Taraxaci D10/Parmelia D10
Ignatia	see Strychnos ignatii					
Illicium verum	see Anisi stellati aetheroleum					
Imperatoria ostruthium	see Peucedanum ostruthium					
Ipecacuanha	see Psychotria ipecacuanha					
Ipecacuanha	see Cephaelis ipecacuanha					
Iris germanica	Fresh rhizome of Iris germanica L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11, 1.5.1		
Iris germanica	Dried peeled rhizome of Iris germanica L., Iris germanica var. florentina L. and Iris pallida Lamarck			HAB 12q (ethanol 25%)	Lotio Pruni comp.	
Iris versicolor	Fresh underground parts (rhizome including roots) of Iris versicolor L. collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.	Iris versicolor APH	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Iris versicolor	Fresh underground parts of Iris versicolor L.	HAB	Iris versicolor	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Juglans regia	Dried outer membrane from the seed of Juglans regia L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Carpellum Mali comp.	
Juglans regia	Dried leaves of Juglans regia L.	DAC	Walnussblätter - Juglandis folium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)		
Juglans regia	Fresh leaves and unripe fruit of Juglans regia L.			HAB 33c	Juglans regia comp.	
Juniperi aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe, non-fermented berry cones of Juniperus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	Juniperi aetheroleum	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Juniperus destillata; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Juniperus communis	Fresh ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L.	HAB	Juniperus communis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 35a	Tropaeolum comp.	
Juniperus communis	Dried tips of shoots of Juniperus communis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Juniperus communis	Dried ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	Juniperi galbulus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8; Extraction with water and sucrose	Betula/Juniperus ; Olibanum comp./ Succinum	
Juniperus communis	see Juniperi aetheroleum					
Juniperus sabina	Fresh, still unlignified, growing tips of twigs of Juniperus sabina L., with adherent leaves	HAB	Juniperus sabina	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Colchicum/Sabina; Primula Auro culta comp.; Sabina	
Kalanchoe daigremontiana	see Bryophyllum daigremontianum					
Kalanchoe pinnata	see Bryophyllum pinnatum					
Kalmia latifolia	Fresh leaves of Kalmia latifolia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Kalmia latifolia HAB; Kalmia latifolia pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Crataegus/Kalmia	
Krameria triandra	Dried, usually fragmented, underground organs of Krameria triandra Ruiz et Pav., known as Peruvian rhatany.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ratanhiae radix; Krameria triandra HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%); extract with ethanol 50% (DER 1:1)	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.	
Kreosotum	see Fagus sylvatica					
Lamium album	Fresh leaves, flowers and young tips shoots of Lamium album L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Lamium album	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
Lamium album	Dried flowers of Lamium album L.	HAB	Lamium album, ethanol. Infusum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)		
Lappa major	see Arctium lappa					
Larix decidua	see Terebinthina laricina					
Lavandula angustifolia	Dried flower of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (Lavandula officinalis Chaix)	Ph.Eur.	Lavandulae flos	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Aesculus/Lavandula siccata ; Lavandula siccata	
Lavandula angustifolia	see Lavandulae aetheroleum					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Lavandulae aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering tops of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (Lavandula officinalis Chaix)	Ph.Eur.	Lavandulae aetheroleum	HAB 12h, API	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./ Formica ; Aurum/Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa ; Ceratum benzoinatum; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Lavendelöl; Oleum lactagogum; Prunus/ Rosmarinus comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis comp.; Resina Laricis/ Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solum uliginosum comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Ledum palustre	Dried tips of twigs of Ledum palustre L.	HAB	Ledum palustre	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Primula Auro culta comp.	
Ledum palustre	Fresh, leafy twig of Ledum palustre L.	Ph.fr.	Ledum palustre pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Leontopodium alpinum	Whole dried flowering plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass. (L. nivale subsp. alpinum (Cass) Greuter)			HAB 36	Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Leontopodium nivale subsp. alpinum	Whole fresh plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass. (Leontopodium nivale subsp. alpinum (Cass) Greuter)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), App. 2.7	Apis comp.	
Leonurus cardiaca	Fresh aerial parts of Leonurus cardiaca L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Leonurus cardiaca; Leonurus cardiaca 3b	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.6, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%),	Cimicifuga comp.	
Levisticum officinale	Whole or cut, dried rhizome and root of Levisticum officinale W.D.J. Koch.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Levistici radix; Levisticum officinale, ethanol.Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), HAB 12d, 12g; see also App. 2.7.: Mucilago Levistici D1	Apis cum Levistico; Levisticum; Levisticum comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Levisticum officinale	Fresh underground parts of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	HAB	Levisticum officinale Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Apis/Larynx comp.; Apis/Levisticum; Arnica/Levisticum comp. ; Avena/ Conchae comp.; Cerebellum comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Larynx comp.; Levisticum	
Lilium lancifolium	Fresh plants of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., without bulbs, collected at flowering time	HAB	Lilium lancifolium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3	Argentum/Quercus comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Lilium lancifolium	Fresh aerial parts of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., collected at flowering time and including bulbils			HAB 33c	Lilium tigrinum comp.; Majorana/Thuja comp.	
Lilium tigrinum	see Lilium lancifolium					
Limonis aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by suitable mechanical means, without the aid of heat, from the fresh peel of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Ph.Eur.	Limonis aetheroleum	API	Citri aetheroleum; Silicea colloidalis comp.; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Linum usitatissimum	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from ripe seeds of Linum usitatissimum L.	Ph.Eur.	Lini oleum virginale	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp.	
Litsea cubeba	see Litsei aetheroleum					
Litsei aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fruit of Litsea cubeba Pers.			Excipient		
Lobaria pulmonaria	Dried thallus of Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm. (Sticta pulmonaria Ach.)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Lobaria pulmonaria HAB; Sticta pulmonaria aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Lichenes comp.	
Lobelia inflata	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lobelia inflata L.	Ph.fr.	Lobelia inflata aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Lobelia comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Lobelia inflata	Whole fresh flowering plants of Lobelia inflata L.	HAB	Lobelia inflata	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Lobelia comp.; Lobelia inflata	
Lycopersicon lycopersicum	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw., collected at flowering time.	HAB 34	(Solanum lycopersicum)	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3 and 4.2.1		Der Merkurstab 1999 Hepatitis, 4/2002: p. 271-7
Lycopodium clavatum	Whole spore-bearing plant of Lycopodium clavatum L.			HAB 33e	Lycopodium; Lycopodium comp.	
Lycopodium clavatum	Dried ripe spores of Lycopodium clavatum L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Lycopodium clavatum HAB; Lycopodium clavatum pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Lycopodium	
Lycopus virginicus	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time	HAB; Ph.fr.	Lycopus virginicus HAB; Lycopus pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Lycopus virginicus	Whole fresh plant of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time.			HAB 33d		Der Merkurstab 5/2004: p. 359

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Lysimachia nummularia	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lysimachia nummularia L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11; Decoction with water:ethanol 96% (12:9.5) (DER 1:2.15) Ref. KC part Tropfen, Puder; see App. 2.7: Lysimachia nummularia Herba rec., glycerol. stab. Decoctum 1:2 Ref. KC part Gel, Salbe	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	
Mahonia aquifolium	Dried bark from branches and twigs and dried tips of twigs of Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.	HAB	Mahonia aquifolium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Majorana	see Origanum majorana					
Maltum	see Hordeum vulgare					
Malus domestica	Core from fresh fruit of Malus domestica Borkh. without kernel			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Carpellum Mali comp.	
Malus domestica	sour apples of Malus domestica Borkh.			see Ferrum pomatum (App. 2.6)		Merkurstab 67(2014) (4)270-282
Malva sylvestris	Whole or fragmented dried flower of Malva sylvestris L. or its cultivated varieties.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Malvae sylvestris flos; Malva sylvestris, ethanol. Infusum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%), HAB 12g	Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis; Phosphorus/ Malva	
Malva sylvestris, Malva neglecta	Dried leaves of Malva sylvestris L., Malva neglecta Wallr. or a mixture of both species	Ph.Eur.	Malvae folium	Extraction together with leaves acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%)	Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis	
Mandragora autumnalis	see Mandragora officinarum			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 or 1.2.12		
Mandragora officinarum	Fresh root of Mandragora officinarum L.			HAB 34d	Betula/Mandragora comp.; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Mandragora; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mandragora officinarum, Mandragora autumnalis	Dried roots of Mandragora officinarum L. and Mandragora autumnalis Bertol.	Ph.Eur.	Mandragora e radice siccata aph; Mandragora, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%) or 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Betula comp.; Mandragora; Mandragora comp.; Mandragora/Meniscus Genus	
Maracuja doce	see Passiflora alata					
Marrubium vulgare	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of Marrubium vulgare L.	Ph.Eur.	Marrubii herba	aqueous extract together with other drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Marum verum	see Teucrium marum					
Matricaria recutita	Fresh flower heads of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	
Matricaria recutita	Whole fresh flowering plants of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Matricaria recutita HAB; Matricaria recutita Rh HAB; Chamomilla recutita aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Bolus alba comp.; Chamomilla; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna	
Matricaria recutita	Fresh underground parts of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert) before flowering time			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11, 1.4.2, 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Ammi visnaga comp.; Belladonna comp. ; Belladonna/Chamomilla; Carum carvi comp.; Chamomilla, Radix; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Nicotiana; Chrysosplenium comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Matricaria recutita	Dried capitula of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert).	Ph.Eur.	Matricariae flos	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 50%), HAB 12f	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Birkenkohle comp.; Oleum rhinale	
Matricaria recutita	Dried root of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Chamomilla, Radix; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Oxalis comp.	
Melaleuca cajuputi Powell, Melaleuca leucadendra	see Cajeputi aetheroleum					
Melissa indicum	see Cymbopogon winterianus					
Melissa officinalis	Fresh leaves and young shoots of Melissa officinalis L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Melissa officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, steam distillation	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Melissa Cupro culta; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Melissa officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., before flowering time	Ph.fr.	Melissa officinalis aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Melissa officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.			HAB 33c	Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Melissa/Sepia comp.	
Melissa officinalis	Dried leaf of Melissa officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Melissae folium	Extracts with ethanol (DER 1:1), together with Majorana with Oleum Cacao (DER 1:1:10), steam distillation	Cera et Mel comp.; Majorana/Melissa; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Melissa officinalis	Dried aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.			HAB 12g	Melissa comp.	
Mentha piperita	Whole or cut dried leaves of Mentha x piperita L.	Ph.Eur.	Menthae piperitae folium	API	Centaurium comp.; Majorana/Mentha/ Ruta	
Mentha piperita	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mentha x piperita L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Mentha piperita	see Menthae piperitae aetheroleum					
Menthae piperitae aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh aerial parts of Mentha x piperita L.	Ph.Eur.	Menthae piperitae aetheroleum	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Oleum rhinale; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Mercurialis perennis	Fresh aerial parts of Mercurialis perennis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Mercurialis perennis ferm 34c	HAB 34c	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Lachesis comp.; Mercurialis / Rosae aetheroleum; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.	
Mercurialis perennis	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.	HAB	Mercurialis perennis 2b	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Berberis/Mercurialis perennis ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis perennis; Mercurialis/Mel	
Mercurialis perennis	Whole dried flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.			Extraction with vegetable oil	Calendula/Mercurialis comp.	
Mezereum	see Daphne mezereum					
Millefolium	see Achillea millefolium					
Mucuna pruriens	Dried hairs from the fruits of Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC	HAB; Ph.fr.	Mucuna pruriens HAB; Mucuna pruriens aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Myristica fragrans	Dried seed kernel of Myristica fragrans Houtt.	Ph.fr.	Myristica fragrans aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Myristica fragrans	Dried, usually lime-treated seeds of Myristica fragrans Houtt., with aril and testa removed	HAB	Myristica fragrans	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%); ethanolic distillate (together with other drugs)	Nux vomica comp.; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Myristica sebifera	see Virola sebifera					
Myroxylon balsamum	see Balsamum peruvianum					
Myrrha	Gum-resin, hardened in air, obtained by incision or produced by spontaneous exudation from the stem and branches of Commiphora molmol Engler and/or other species of Commiphora.	Ph.Eur.	Myrrha	Myrrhae tinctura Ph.Eur.	Aurum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Salvia comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica	
Myrrha	see Commiphora					
Nasturtium officinale	Whole fresh plant of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%)		
Nasturtium officinale	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time	HAB	Nasturtium officinale	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3)	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum	
Nasturtium officinale	Dried aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.			API	Mercurius vivus comp.	
Nicotiana tabacum	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	Nicotiana tabacum Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1, HAB 33b	Ammi visnaga comp.; Belladonna comp. ; Berberis/Nicotiana comp. ; Bleiglanz/ Secale comp.; Borago comp.; Carum carvi comp.; Chamomilla/Nicotiana; Cor/ Crataegus comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum/Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Nicotiana/ Quarz ; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Oxalis/Quarz comp.; Retina/Secale comp.; Robinia comp. ; Tabacum; Tabacum Cupro cultum	
Nicotiana tabacum	Dried fermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 18%)	Tabacum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Nicotiana tabacum	Dried unfermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	Nicotiana tabacum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 12d, 12f, APC 4.2, 4.3	Aconitum/Nicotiana comp.; Carbones/ Pankreas/Witherit ; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Cuprum/Nicotiana; Equisetum arvense/Tabacum; Equisetum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum/Tabacum; Rosmarini aetheroleum/Tabacum ; Tabacum	
Nux moschata	see Myristica fragrans					
Nux vomica	see Strychnos nux-vomica L.					
Ocimum basilicum	Fresh aerial parts of Ocimum basilicum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Ocimum basilicum ex herba	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Basilicum comp.	
Olibanum	Solidified gum-resin obtained from incisions in the shrubs or trees of members of the genus Boswellia, particularly Boswellia carteri Birdwood (Syn. Boswellia sacra Flueckiger) and/or Boswellia frereana Birdwood			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 4.1.1	Aurum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Olibanum comp./Succinum	
Ononis spinosa	Whole or cut, dried root of Ononis spinosa L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ononidis radix; Ononis spinosa, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)		
Onopordum acanthium	Fresh leaves of Onopordum acanthium L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Chelidonium comp.	
Onopordum acanthium	Fresh flowerhead of Onopordum acanthium L.			HAB 33c; see App. 2.6: Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1 % Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø, also extracts with ethanol 24,5% or WFI	Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./ Plumbum ; Onopordum/Primula comp.	
Orchis species or Ophrydeae tribe	Filial tubers of different species of the genus Orchis L. (Orchidaceae) or other suitable intra- and intergeneric Orchis-Hybrids of the tribe Ophrydeae, which have been blanched in boiling water and dried			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.4.3	Cerebellum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Origanum majorana	Fresh aerial parts of Origanum majorana L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Origanum majorana	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, HAB 33c	Majorana; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Origanum majorana	Dried aerial parts of Origanum majorana L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), HAB 12g, extraction with ethanol (DER 1:1); together with Melissa with Oleum Cacao (DER 1:1:10)	Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Majorana; Majorana/Melissa; Majorana/Mentha/ Ruta; Melissa comp.	
Origanum majorana	Ripe fruit of Origanum majorana L.			Ethanolic decoction (DER 1:3), percolation with ethanol 96% and aqueous decoction of the residue	Capsella/Majorana comp.	
Origanum majorana	Whole fresh flowering plants of Origanum majorana L.	Ph.fr.	Origanum majorana pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (Origanum majorana)
Oxalis acetosella	Fresh leaves of Oxalis acetosella L.	HAB	Oxalis acetosella e foliis Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.7, 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%), 1.5.1, HAB 12a (after Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3); maceration with ethanol 36% (DER 1:1.3).	Belladonna/Oxalis ; Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Formica/Oxalis; Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis; Oxalis; Oxalis comp.	
Oxalis acetosella	Whole fresh flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L.			HAB 12c, 34b	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Berberis/ Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Carduus marianus/Oxalis ; Formica/ Oxalis; Oxalis; Oxalis/Quarz comp.; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Oxalis acetosella	Dried flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L			HAB 12f	Oxalis	
Paeonia officinalis	Fresh underground parts of Paeonia officinalis L. emend. Willd., collected during spring	HAB	Paeonia officinalis; Paeonia officinalis, ethanol.Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.11, HAB 33c	Carduus benedictus/Paeonia officinalis; Hirudo comp.	
Panax ginseng	Whole or cut dried root, designated white ginseng; treated with steam and then dried, designated red ginseng, of Panax ginseng C.A. Mey.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ginseng radix	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		Vademecum: Ginseng

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Papaver rhoeas	Fresh flowers of Papaver rhoeas L.	HAB	Papaver rhoeas	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, HAB 12a (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3), 33c	Papaver rhoeas	
Papaver somniferum	Fresh latex obtained from incisions in unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.			Extraction with ethanol 36% (DER 1:100)	Papaver somniferum	
Papaver somniferum	Fresh unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 33c	Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Papaver somniferum	
Paris quadrifolia	Whole fresh plants of Paris quadrifolia L., collected when the fruits have ripened	HAB	Paris quadrifolia	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Parmelia	see Hypogymnia physodes					
Passiflora alata	Dried leaves of Passiflora alata Curtis containing at least 1.0% of total flavonoids, expressed in apigenin	Ph.Br.	Maracujá doce/Passiflorae dulcis folium			
Passiflora alata	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora alata Curtis			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		ABMA-Vademecum
Passiflora caerulea	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora caerulea L. collected at flowering time			HAB 33c, extraction with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Avena/Passiflora comp.; Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Passiflora comp.	
Passiflora incarnata	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora incarnata L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Passiflora incarnata HAB; Passiflora incarnata PPH Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Avena sativa comp.; Passiflora incarnata	
Peat	see Solum uliginosum					
Pelargonium species	see Geranii aetheroleum					
Petasites hybridus	Fresh rhizome of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb. with attached roots			HAB 33c	Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica ; Petasites, Radix ; Petasites/Plantago comp.; Plantago comp.	
Petasites hybridus	Whole fresh flowering plant of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Petasites, Planta tota	
Petroselinum crispum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill convar. crispum, collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Petroselinum crispum convar. crispum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Peucedanum ostruthium	Fresh rhizome of Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W.D.J. Koch			Ph. Eur. 1.2.10, ethanolic decoction (1:2.15) (ethanol 50%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Peumus boldus	Whole or fragmented dried leaf of Peumus boldus Molina.	Ph.Eur.	Boldi folium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Boldo
Peumus boldus	The vegetable drug consists of dried leaves containing at least 1.5% of volatile oil and at least 0.1% of total alkaloids expressed in boldine (Peumus boldus Molina)	Ph.Br.	Boldo	Ph.Br.: 10% tincture with ethanol 60%		ABMA-Vademecum
Phyllitis scolopendrium	Fresh spore-bearing leaves of Phyllitis scolopendrium L. (Asplenium scolopendrium L.)			HAB 34h, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs, 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aquilinum comp.; Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens	Nodes from the stem of Phyllostachys species, especially Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv., collected in summer			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 35c	Bambusa ; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Phytolacca americana	Fresh roots of Phytolacca americana L. (Phytolacca decandra), collected during autumn	HAB	Phytolacca americana	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Phytolacca; Phytolacca comp.	
Phytolacca americana	Fresh ripe fruits of Phytolacca americana L.	HAB	Phytolacca americana e baccis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Picea abies	Fresh young tips of shoots of Picea abies (L.) Karst.			Extraction with Water:Sucrose (1:1) (DER 1:5)	Petasites/Plantago comp.	
Picea species	see Piceae aetheroleum DAB					
Piceae aetheroleum DAB	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of needles and tips of branches or branches of Picea abies (L.) Karsten (Synonym: Picea excelsa [Lamarck] Link) and of Abies sibirica Ledebour or other species of the genera Abies and Picea	DAB	Fichtennadelöl - Piceae aetheroleum	API	Salviae aetheroleum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Pimpinella anisum	Whole dry cremocarp of Pimpinella anisum L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Anisi fructus; Pimpinella anisum, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), 1.4.4	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp. ; Anis-Pyrit ; Antimonit/Anisum; Centaurium comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Ferrum/Anisum; Levisticum comp.; Sirupus Thymi comp.; Verbascum comp.	
Pimpinella anisum	see Anisi aetheroleum					
Pini aetheroleum DAB	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of fresh needles and tips or fresh branches with needles and tips of the twigs of Pinus sylvestris L. or other species of the genus Pinus.	DAB	Kiefernnadelöl - Pini aetheroleum DAB	API		
Pini pumilionis aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and twigs of Pinus mugo Turra.	Ph.Eur.	Pini pumilionis aetheroleum	API	Archangelica comp. ; Berberis/Juniperus comp.	
Pini sylvestris aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and branches of Pinus sylvestris L.	Ph.Eur.	Pini silvestris aetheroleum	API	Archangelica comp. ; Oleum camphoratum comp.	
Pinus mugo	see Pini pumilionis aetheroleum					
Pinus pinaster and/or Pinus massoniana	see Terebinthinae aetheroleum					
Pinus sylvestris	see Pini sylvestris aetheroleum see Pini aetheroleum DAB					
Piper nigrum	Dried, ripe or nearly ripe fruit of Piper nigrum L. with an unbroken pericarp (black pepper) or with the outer layers of the pericarp removed (white pepper)	Ph.Eur.	Piperis fructus	aqueous extraction together with other drugs, aqueous extraction with sucrose	Gentiana/Zingiber comp.	
Pix betulina	Birch tar see Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrhart					
Plantago lanceolata	Fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%), HAB 34c, App. 2.6: Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., ethanol.Digestio (1:3.1) with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø; aqueous extraction with sucrose (1:1) (DER 1:5)	Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica ; Petasites/Plantago comp.; Phytolacca comp.; Plantago comp.; Plantago lanceolata ; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Plantago lanceolata	Whole or fragmented, dried leaf and scape of Plantago lanceolata L. s.l.	Ph.Eur.	Plantaginis lanceolatae folium	Raw material for the production of Cinis Capsellae comp. (App. 2.6)	Cinis Capsellae comp.	
Polygala senega	Dried, whole or fragmented root and root crown of Polygala senega L. or root of Polygala tenuifolia Willd., with rootlets removed.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Polygalae radix; Polygala senega HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Senega
Polygonatum odoratum	Fresh, underground parts of Polygonatum odoratum (Mill.) Druce			Ph. Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 33d	Vespa crabro comp.	
Polypodium vulgare	Fresh leaves of Polypodium vulgare L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.5, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2.	Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.	
Populus tremula	Fresh leaves of Populus tremula L.			Ph. Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%) together with fresh bark 1:1 (see Populus tremula, fresh bark), HAB 33d	Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Populus tremula	fresh bark of Populus tremula L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%) together with leaves 1:1 (see Populus tremula, fresh leaves)		
Potentilla erecta	Whole or cut, dried rhizome, freed from the roots, of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch. (P. tormentilla Stokes)	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Tormentillae rhizoma; Potentilla erecta, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Corallium comp.; Hydrastis comp.; Tormentilla	
Potentilla erecta	Fresh underground parts of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch., collected during spring	HAB	Potentilla erecta	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1, HAB 34d	Tormentilla ; Tormentilla comp.	
Poterium	see Sarcopoterium spinosum					
Primula farinosa	Fresh roots of Primula farinosa L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.4.2		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Primula veris	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.5, 1.5.1, HAB 33c. See App.2.6: Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø; Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1: 12.35) with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø;	Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./ Plumbum ; Onopordum/Primula comp.; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo ; Primula Auro culta ; Primula Auro culta comp.	
Primula veris	Dried flowers of Primula veris L.	DAC	Schlüsselblumenblüten - Primulae flos cum calyce	HAB 12g	Primula comp.	
Prunus dulcis	see Amygdalae oleum virginale					
Prunus dulcis var. amara	Dried, ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A.Webb, var. amara (DC.) Buchheim	HAB	Prunus dulcis var. amara	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Prunus laurocerasus	Fresh leaves of Prunus laurocerasus L.	HAB	Prunus laurocerasus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, see also App. 2.7: Laurocerasus 100%		
Prunus spinosa	Juice from the fruit of Prunus spinosa L.			API	Lotio Pruni comp.; Prunus spinosa; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Prunus spinosa	Fresh flowers and young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L., harvested at the beginning of the blooming season	Ph.fr.	Prunus spinosa pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Aurum/Prunus ; Levico comp.; Prunus spinosa; Prunus spinosa cum Ferro ; Skorodit comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Prunus spinosa	Fresh flowers of Prunus spinosa L., collected before the petals drop off	HAB	Prunus spinosa	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Prunus spinosa	Fresh fruit of Prunus spinosa L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%) HAB 12o; extraction with ethanol 24,5% (DER 1:4)	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Prunus ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Cactus/ Crataegus comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Prunus spinosa; Prunus/ Rosmarinus comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Prunus spinosa	Fresh young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L., collected some weeks after flowering	HAB	Prunus spinosa e summitatibus; Prunus spinosa e summitatibus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Aqua Maris/Prunus spinosa, Summitates ; Aurum/Prunus ; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Formica/ Prunus spinosa; Prunus spinosa	
Prunus spinosa	Fully opened dried flowers of Prunus spinosa L.	DAC	Schlehdornblüten	HAB 12g	Malva comp.; Prunus spinosa	
Psychotria ipecacuanha	Dried underground organs of Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Standl. After drying at 100 to 105 °C, the herbal drug has a total alkaloid content, calculated of emetine ($C_{29}H_{40}N_2O_4$; Mr 480.7), of minimum 1.5 per cent	HAB	Psychotria ipecacuanha; Psychotria ipecacuanha, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol (70%)	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Drosera/ Ipecacuanha comp.; Ipecacuanha ; Sirupus Thymi comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Ipeca
Pteridium aquilinum	Fresh leaves of Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.5, HAB 34c, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aquilinum comp.; Arum maculatum/ Pteridium aquilinum ; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Pulmonaria officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Pulmonaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Pulmonaria officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Pulsatilla vulgaris	Whole fresh flowering plants of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Pulsatilla vulgaris HAB; Pulsatilla pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Echinacea comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.; Pulsatilla ; Sirupus Thymi comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Pulsatilla vulgaris	Fresh flowers of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill. with apical leaf husk.			HAB 33c	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Berberis/Nicotiana comp. ; Bryonia/ Pulsatilla comp.; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Hirudo comp.; Pulsatilla	
Pyrus malus	see Malus sylvestris					
Quebracho	see Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco					
Quercus infectoria	see Gallae turcicae					
Quercus robur and Quercus petraea	Fresh bark from young twigs, branches and shoots of Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.			HAB 12k	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Quercus, Cortex	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Quercus robur, Quercus petraea, Quercus pubescens	Cut and dried bark from the fresh young branches of Quercus robur L., Q. petraea (Matt.) Liebl. or Quercus pubescens Willd.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Quercus cortex; Quercus, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), 1.4.3, HAB 12q, APC 4.3, see App 2.7: Quercus Cortex sicc, ethanol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Apatit/ Conchae; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Calcium carbonicum cum Quercu ; Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Conchae/ Quercus comp.; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Lobelia comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Pharmakolith comp.; Quercus comp.; Quercus, Cortex	.
Ranunculus bulbosus	Whole fresh flowering plants of Ranunculus bulbosus L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ranunculus bulbosus HAB; Ranunculus bulbosus pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Primula Auro culta comp.	
Raphanus sativus	Fresh underground parts of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Mill.) J. Kern.	HAB	Raphanus sativus var. niger	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Raphanus sativus	Dried root of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Miller) Kerner	Ph.fr.	Raphanus sativus aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 55%)		
Ratanhia	see Krameria triandra					
Rauvolfia serpentina	Whole or cut, dried roots of Rauvolfia serpentina (L.) Bentham ex Kurz	DAB; HAB	Rauwolfiawurzel DAB; Rauwolfia serpentina HAB; Rauvolfia serpentina, ethanol.Decoctum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Rauwolfia serpentina	
Resina Laricis	see Terebinthina laricina					
Rhamnus frangula	Fresh bark of the stems and branches of Frangula alnus Mill.	HAB	Frangula alnus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33c, 33e	Tropaeolum comp.	
Rheum officinale, Rheum palmatum	Rhubarb consists of the whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum palmatum L. or of Rheum officinale Baillon or of hybrids of these two species or of a mixture. The underground parts are often divided; the stem and most of the bark with the rootlets are removed.	Ph.Eur.	Rhei radix	Ph. Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Rheum rhaponticum	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum rhaponticum L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		Vademecum: Rheum rhaponticum (ext.)
Rhododendron campylocarpum / Rhododendron aureum	Dried leafy twigs of Rhododendron campylocarpum Hook. f. and Rhododendron aureum Georgi, their hybrids, or mixtures thereof	HAB	Rhododendron	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Rhododendron ferrugineum	Fresh, flowering, leafy, twigs of Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Ph.fr.	Rhododendron ferrugineum aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr
Rhus toxicodendron	Fresh, young leafy twigs of Rhus toxicodendron L., harvested in summer	Ph.fr.	Rhus toxicodendron pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Rhus toxicodendron	Fresh, young, not yet lignified shoots of Rhus toxicodendron L. with leaves	HAB	Rhus toxicodendron	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d		
Rhus toxicodendron	Fresh leaves of Rhus toxicodendron L. (Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d	Aconitum comp.; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus toxicodendron; Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Ribes nigrum	Fresh leaves of Ribes nigrum L.	Ph.fr.	Ribes nigrum pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		
Ricini oleum virginale	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from the seeds of Ricinus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	Ricini oleum virginale	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp.	
Ricinus communis	Dried seeds of Ricinus communis L.	Ph.fr.	Ricinus communis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)		
Ricinus communis	see Ricini oleum virginale					
Robinia pseudoacacia	Fresh bark from young branches of Robinia pseudoacacia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Robinia pseudoacacia HAB; Robinia pseudo-acacia aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), 1.2.9, HAB 33e	Robinia comp.	
Rosa	Fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly dark red tea hybrids			HAB 37a	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites; Rosa, Flos	
Rosa centifolia	Fresh petals of Rosa centifolia L.			see App.2.6: Ferrum rosatum	Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Rosa, Flos	
Rosa damascena, Rosa centifolia	see Rosae extractum					
Rosa gallica, Rosa centifolia, Rosa damascena	Dried buds and petals of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa centifolia L., Rosa damascena Mill. as well as dark red tea hybrids			HAB 12f	Rosa, Flos	
Rosa gallica, Rosa damascena, Rosa centifolia	see Rosae aetheroleum					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Rosae aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa, particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa damascena Mill. and Rosa centifolia L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 96%), API (HAB 16.2)	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Belladonna /Rosae aetheroleum; Cineraria/Rosae aetheroleum; Cornea/ Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum/ Hornerz comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Rosae aetheroleum; Euphrasia/Rosae aetheroleum; Iris bovis comp.; Mercurialis / Rosae aetheroleum; Nervus opticus comp.; Rosa, Flos; Rosae aetheroleum/Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Rosae extractum	Substance obtained by stepwise extraction with petrolether and ethanol from fresh flowers of Rosa damascena L. and Rosa centifolia L. (DER ca. 500:1)			API	Aurum/Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa	
Rosmarini aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering aerial parts of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Rosmarini aetheroleum	API	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Nicotiana comp.; Aesculus, Cortex/Rosmarini aetheroleum; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./ Formica ; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Ceratum benzoinatum; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Oleum lactagogum; Primula comp. ; Prunus/ Rosmarinus comp.; Resina Laricis/ Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Rosmarini aetheroleum/Tabacum ; Rosmarinus comp.; Rosmarinöl; Sal Maris comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Vespa crabro comp.	
Rosmarinus officinalis	Fresh leaves of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	HAB	Rosmarinus officinalis e foliis recentibus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Betonica/Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus	
Rosmarinus officinalis	Fresh flowering twigs of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Rosmarinus officinalis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus comp.	
Rosmarinus officinalis	Whole dried leaf of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Rosmarini folium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.4.4	Betonica/Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus	
Rosmarinus officinalis	see Rosmarini aetheroleum					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Rumex crispus	Fresh underground parts of Rumex crispus L., harvested at the end of the vegetation period	HAB	Rumex crispus HAB; Rumex crispus pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Rumex crispus	
Ruta graveolens	Fresh aerial parts of Ruta graveolens L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Ruta graveolens	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Ruta graveolens; Symphytum comp.	
Ruta graveolens	Fresh, aerial, unlignified parts of Ruta graveolens L. harvested before flowering	Ph.fr.	Ruta graveolens pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Sabadilla	see Schoenocaulon officinale					
Sabal serrulatum	see Serenoa repens					
Sabina	see Juniperus sabina					
Saccharum officinarum	see Caramel					
Saccharum tostum	see Saccharum officinarum					
Saccharum tostum	see Caramel					
Salix alba ssp. vitellina	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix alba ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang.			HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Passiflora comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Salix purpurea	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix purpurea L.			HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Salix species	Fresh leaves of Salix alba, ssp. alba L. and/or ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang. and/or Salix purpurea L. and/or Salix viminalis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.5, APC 3.8.2, ethanolic maceration (ethanol 25%)	Aspidium/Salix comp.; Chelidonium comp.	
Salix species	Whole or fragmented dried bark of young branches or whole dried pieces of current-year twigs of various species of genus Salix including S. purpurea L., S. daphnoides Vill. and S. fragilis L.	Ph.Eur.	Salicis cortex	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		
Salix viminalis	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix viminalis L.			HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Salix vitellina	see Salix species and Salix alba ssp. vitellina					
Salvia officinalis	Fresh leaves of Salvia officinalis L.	HAB	Salvia officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, HAB 33d, 12c	Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Calendula/ Echinacea comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Salvia officinalis	Whole or cut, dried leaves of Salvia officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Salviae officinalis folium; Salvia officinalis e foliis siccatis, ethanol. Infusum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 70%), Starting material for preparation of Salvia officinalis, Folium sicc., Infusum, glycerol 1:5 (app. 2.7), API	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Fragaria/ Urtica comp.; Levisticum comp.; Salvia comp.	
Salvia officinalis	see Salviae officinalis aetherolea (DAC)					
Salviae officinalis aetherolea (DAC)	Thujone-rich essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the aerial parts of Salvia officinalis L.	DAC	Dalmatinische Salbeiöle, - Salviae officinalis aetherolea	API	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Majorana/ Thuja comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Sambucus nigra	Fresh pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.			HAB 35a	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra	Dried pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra	Fresh, blooming flower heads of Sambucus nigra L.	Ph.fr.	Sambucus nigra pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Sambucus nigra, flos
Sambucus nigra	Fresh inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.			HAB 33c	Phytolacca comp.; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra	Dried flowers of Sambucus nigra L.	Ph.Eur.	Sambuci flos	HAB 12g	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Malva comp.; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra	Equal parts of fresh leaves and inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.	HAB	Sambucus nigra	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Sambucus/Teucrium comp.	
Sanguinaria canadensis	Dried underground parts of Sanguinaria canadensis L., collected in autumn	HAB	Sanguinaria canadensis; Sanguinaria canadensis, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Calendula comp. ; Oxalis comp.; Sanguinaria; Sanguinaria comp.	
Sanicula europaea	Fresh whole flowering plant of Sanicula europaea L.	Ph.fr.	Sanicula europaea pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Cichorium comp.	
Sarothamnus scoparius	see Cytisus scoparius					
Sarsaparilla	see Smilax species					
Schoenocaulon officinale	Dried ripe seeds of Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray (Syn.: Sabadilla officinarum Brandt & Ratzeb.)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Schoenocaulon officinale HAB; Sabadilla pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Scilla	see Urginea maritima					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Scolopendrium	see Phyllitis scolopendrium					
Secale cornutum	see Claviceps purpurea					
Sedum acre	Fresh aerial parts of Sedum acre L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Sedum acre	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Selenicereus grandiflorus	Fresh young stem and flowers of Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose.	HAB	Selenicereus grandiflorus; Selenicereus grandiflorus, ethanol. Digestio	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.3, HAB 33d	Arnica/Cactus comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Cactus grandiflorus ; Cactus/ Crataegus ; Cactus/Crataegus comp.; Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Cactus/ Strophantus kombe ; Crataegus comp. ; Sarothamnus comp.	
Semecarpus anacardium	Dried fruit of Semecarpus anarcardium L. f. (Anacardium orientale L.)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Semecarpus anacardium aph	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur.Hom. (1.1.10, ethanol 90%) or HAB monograph (and Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8)		
Senecio bicolor	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod., collected before flowering			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7	Cineraria maritima; Cineraria/Rosae aetheroleum	
Senecio jacobaea	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio jacobaea L., collected at flowering time			HAB 33d	Senecio comp.	
Senega	see Polygala senega					
Senna	see Cassia angustifolia					
Serenoa repens	Dried ripe fruit of Serenoa repens (W. Bartram) Small (Syn. Sabal serrulata (Michaux) T. Nuttal ex Schultes & Schultes	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Sabalis serrulatae fructus; sabal serrulata PPH Ph.fr.; Serenoa repens aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Silybum marianum	Mature fruit, devoid of the pappus, of Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertner	HAB; Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Silybi mariani fructus; Silybum marianum HAB; Silybum marianum, ethanol. Decoctum HAB	According to the relevant monograph (HAB or Ph.fr.)	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Anagallis comp.; Carduus marianus ; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Carduus marianus/Oxalis ; Chelidonium comp.; Lycopodium comp.	
Smilax	see Smilax species	HAB	Smilax			
Smilax regelii, Smilax medica	Dried underground parts of Smilax regelii Killip et C.V. Morton and Smilax medica Schltdl. et Cham. or related species	HAB; Ph.fr.	Smilax HAB; Sarsaparilla pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Sarsaparilla

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Solanum dulcamara	Fresh flowers of Solanum dulcamara L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.11; decoction with water and ethanol 96% (12:9.5)(DER 1:2.15) Ref. KC part Tropfen, Puder; see App. 2.7: Solanum dulcamara Flos rec., glycerol. stab. Decoctum 1.2 Ref. KC part Gel, Salbe	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	
Solanum dulcamara	Dried, lignified stems of Solanum dulcamara L.	DAB 6 Erg.B.	Stipites Dulcamara, Bittersüßstengel	Aqueous decoction together with other drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Solanum dulcamara	Fresh, young, blooming, leafy-stem of Solanum dulcamara L.	Ph.fr.	Dulcamara pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Solanum lycopersicum	see Lycopersicon lycopersicum					
Solidago virgaurea	Fresh inflorescence of Solidago virgaurea L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Solidago virgaurea HAB; Solidago virga aurea pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Aquilinum comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Solidago virgaurea	Fresh aerial parts of Solidago virgaurea L., collected at flowering time			HAB 12c, 33c	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp. ; Scilla comp.; Solidago virgaurea	
Solum uliginosum	Fresh moist peat from moorland [e.g. upland moor]			see App. 2.6: Peat moss extract composition I and Peat moss extract composition II	Solum uliginosum comp.	Vademecum: Solum
Spartium scoparium	see Cytisus scoparius					
Spigelia anthelmia	Dried aerial parts of Spigelia anthelmia L.	HAB	Spigelia anthelmia	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Spinacia oleracea	Fresh underground parts of Spinacia oleracea L.			HAB 34f	Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Senecio comp.	
Spiraea	see Filipendula ulmaria					
Spiritus e Vino	Distillate of wine, Vitis vinifera L., ethanol 85.7-94.2% m/m			Vehicle for preparing a tincture of Crocus sativus (see App. 2.6, Kalium aceticum comp.)		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Stachys officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev., collected at flowering time	HAB	Stachys officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Betonica/Rosmarinus	
Staphysagria	see Delphinium staphisagria					
Sticta	see Lobaria pulmonaria					
Stramonium	see Datura stramonium					
Strophanthus kombe	Fatty oil from the seeds of Strophanthus kombe Oliv.			API, Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (anhydrous ethanol)	Cinis Arnicae comp.; Oleum Strophanthi ; Onopordon comp./Adonis	
Strophanthus kombe	Dried ripe seeds of Strophanthus kombe Oliv.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.6 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Aurum/Strophanthus kombe ; Aurum/ Valeriana comp.; Cactus/Strophantus kombe ; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Oleum Strophanthi ; Strophanthus comp.; Strophanthus kombe	
Strychnos ignatii	Dried, ripe seed of Strychnos ignatii P.J.Bergius	Ph.Eur.	Strychnos ignatii aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%, 3-5 weeks), HAB 35b	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Ignatia; Ignatia comp.; Sepia comp.	
Strychnos nux-vomica	Dried, ripe seed of Strychnos nux-vomica L.	Ph.Eur.	Strychnos nux-vomica aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); HAB 35b	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Gentiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Nux vomica ; Nux vomica comp.; Rhus/ Salix comp.; Robinia comp.	
Styrax tonkinensis	see Benzoe					
Symphytum officinale	Fresh underground parts of Symphytum officinale L.	HAB	Symphytum officinale	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.11, HAB 34c	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Antimonit comp.; Arnica comp.; Arnica/ Symphytum comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Salvia comp.; Stannum/Symphytum comp. ; Symphytum; Symphytum comp.	
Symphytum officinale	Fresh aerial parts of Symphytum officinale L., collected at flowering time			HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula/ Urtica comp.	
Syzygium aromaticum	Whole flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L.M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison) dried until they become reddish-brown	Ph.Eur.	Caryophylli flos	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13; ethanolic distillate (together with other drugs)	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp. ; Centaurium comp.	
Syzygium aromaticum	see Caryophylli floris aetheroleum					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Tabacum	see Nicotiana tabacum					
Taraxacum officinale	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Taraxacum officinale HAB; Taraxacum officinale Rh HAB; Taraxacum dens leonis PPH Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), 1.5.1, HAB 34c	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.; Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Chrysosplenium comp.; Cichorium/ Taraxacum comp.; Gentiana comp.; Taraxacum; Taraxacum Stanno cultum; Taraxacum Stanno cultum/Hepar Bovis	
Taraxacum officinale	Fresh underground parts of Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg. collected in autumn (autumnale) or spring (vernale)			HAB 34c; Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.2 (the latex only is processed)	Taraxacum	
Tartarus crudus	Cream of tartar (Tartarus crudus), Vitis vinifera L.			raw material for the production of Tartarus stibiatus and Solutio alkalina		
Terebinthina laricina	Balsam obtained from holes drilled in the trunks of Larix decidua Mill.	HAB	Terebinthina laricina	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 96%), 3.2.1, 4.1.1, (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8, ethanol 50%), API	Absinthium/Resina Laricis ; Ananassa comp. ; Apis/Berberis comp.; Arnica/ Symphytum comp. ; Belladonna/Lens cristallina Columbae/ Resina Laricis; Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Chrysolith comp.; Echinacea/ Viscum comp.; Flores Sambuci comp./ Quarz; Galenit/Retina comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Plantago comp.; Quarz/Resina Laricis; Resina Laricis; Resina Laricis comp.; Resina Laricis/Oleum Terebinthinae; Resina Laricis/Retina; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Retina comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Sambucus comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Terebinthinae aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation, followed by rectification at a temperature below 180 °C, from the oleoresin obtained by tapping Pinus pinaster Aiton and/or Pinus massoniana D.Don.	Ph.Eur.	Terebinthinae aetheroleum	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp.	
Teucrium marum	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of Teucrium marum L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Teucrium marum	Fresh aerial parts of Teucrium marum L., without lignified sections of twigs	HAB	Teucrium marum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Teucrium scorodonia	Fresh aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Teucrium scorodonia HAB; Teucrium scorodonia pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Kalium/Teucrium comp.; Sambucus/ Teucrium comp.; Teucrium scorodonia	
Teucrium scorodonia	Dried aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.			API, APC 4.3	Species pulmonales; Teucrium scorodonia	
Thuja occidentalis	Fresh leafy branches of Thuja occidentalis L., collected preferably in spring	Ph.fr.	Thuya occidentalis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Thuja occidentalis	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L.	HAB	Thuja occidentalis; Thuja occidentalis Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.2, HAB 12c, 33e	Argentum nitricum comp. ; Argentum/ Urtica comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Primula Auro culta comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.; Thuja comp. ; Thuja occidentalis; Thuja occidentalis Argento culta; Vespa crabro comp.	
Thymi typo thymolo aetheroleum	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh flowering aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., T. zygis L. or a mixture of both species	Ph.Eur.	Thymi typo thymolo aetheroleum	HAB 12i, API	Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Majorana/ Thuja comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Thymi aetheroleum ; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Thymus serpyllum	Whole or cut, dried, flowering aerial parts of Thymus serpyllum L.	Ph.Eur.	Serpylli herba	Decoction with water, together with other herbal drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Thymus vulgaris	Fresh aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Thymus vulgaris	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5		
Thymus vulgaris	Whole leaves and flowers separated from the previously dried stems of Thymus vulgaris L. or Thymus zygis L. or a mixture of both species.	Ph.Eur.	Thymi herba	Decoction with water, together with other herbal drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Thymus vulgaris, Thymus zygis	see Thymi typo thymolo aetheroleum					
Tilia cordata, Tilia platyphyllos	Fresh inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller and Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli	HAB 34	Tilia europaea	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Tilia cordata, Tilia platyphyllos, Tilia x vulgaris	Whole, dried inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller, of Tilia platyphyllos Scop., of Tilia x vulgaris Heyne or a mixture of these	Ph.Eur.	Tiliae flos	HAB 12g	Malva comp.	
Tormentilla	see Potentilla erecta					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Toxicodendron	see Rhus toxicodendron					
Toxicodendron quercifolium	see Rhus toxicodendron					
Tritici aestivi oleum raffinatum	Fatty oil obtained from the germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. by cold expression or other suitable mechanical means and/or by extraction. It is then refined.	Ph.Eur.	Tritici aestivi oleum raffinatum	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp.	
Triticum aestivum	Fresh germinated fruit of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d	Hirnstamm/Triticum	
Triticum aestivum	Fresh parts projecting out of the infloresence spikelet of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.			HAB 33d		
Triticum aestivum	Dried germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. emend Fiori et Paol.			API	Hirnstamm/Triticum; Levisticum comp.	
Triticum aestivum	Wheat gluten (Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.)			Starting material for the preparation of Calicum silicicum comp. (app. 2.6)		
Triticum aestivum	see Tritici aestivi oleum raffinatum					
Triticum repens	see Elymus repens					
Triticum vulgare	Dried inflorescences of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.1)	Flores Tritici comp.	
Tropaeolum majus	Fresh aerial parts of Tropaeolum majus L., collected at flowering time			HAB 12c, 33b, 33c	Bellis/Tropaeolum; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Placenta/ Tropaeolum ; Tropaeolum comp.	
Tulipa silvestris	Fresh whole flowering plant of Tulipa silvestris L.			HAB 33a		Vademecum: Tulipa
Urginea maritima	Fresh, fleshy scale leaves of the red-scaled subspecies of Urginea maritima (L.) Baker sensu latiore (e.g. Urginea numidica [Jord. et Fourr.] Grey) with a clearly detectable scilliroside content	HAB	Urginea maritima; Urginea maritima, ethanol. Digestio	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.2.3, HAB 33b	Adonis/Scilla comp.; Convallaria/ Primula comp.; Scilla alba; Scilla comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Urtica dioica	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Urtica dioica L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Urtica dioica aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 33c; extraction with ethanol 73% and sucrose (3:2) (Drug:excipient 1:0.9)	Aqua Maris comp.; Berberis e fructibus comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica/Gentiana; Tropaeolum comp.; Urtica dioica	
Urtica dioica	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.4, 1.1.7, 1.5.1, 4.2.1	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Urtica dioica ; Urtica dioica Ferro culta	
Urtica dioica	Dried flowers of Urtica dioica L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13, infusion with ethanol 33% (DER 1:6) or with water together with other herbal drugs	Capsella/Majorana comp.	
Urtica dioica	Dried, aerial parts with maximum 3 mm thick stems of Urtica dioica L., collected shortly before flowering			HAB 12g	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Levisticum comp.; Urtica dioica	
Urtica dioica	Fresh underground parts of Urtica dioica L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1 (see App.2.5 Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Radix)	Urtica dioica ; Urtica dioica Ferro culta	
Urtica dioica	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Urtica dioica L			APC 3.7.5		
Urtica urens	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Urtica urens L.	Ph.fr.	Urtica urens pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Berberis, Planta tota/Urtica urens ; Primula Auro culta comp.	
Urtica urens	Fresh, whole plant of Urtica urens L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1	Berberis, Planta tota/Urtica urens ; Primula Auro culta comp.	
Urtica urens	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of Urtica urens L.	BP; HAB	Urtica urens	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.1.4, HAB 12c, 33c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Arnica/Urtica urens ; Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Urtica comp.	
Urtica urens	Dried, aerial parts of Urtica urens L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), 1.4.4	Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Usnea barbata	Dried thallus from Usnea P. Br. ex Adans. species, especially Usnea barbata (L.) Wigg.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); extraction with water together with other lichens (DER 1:6)	Lichenes comp.	
Uva ursi	see Arctostaphylos uva-ursi					
Valeriana officinalis	Fresh, underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Valeriana officinalis recens pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Valeriana officinalis	Fresh underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. sensu latiore	HAB	Valeriana officinalis, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.9, HAB 33c, extract with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Avena comp. ; Avena sativa comp.; Avena/Passiflora comp.; Cinis Arnicae comp.; Hyoscyamus/Valeriana; Hypericum/ Passiflora comp.; Valeriana comp.	
Valeriana officinalis	Dried, whole or fragmented underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. s.l., including the rhizome surrounded by the roots and stolons	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Valerianae radix	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Vaucheria species	Fresh, whole organism of Vaucheria DC species			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Vaucheria	
Veratrum album	Carefully dried rhizome with attached roots of Veratrum album L.	HAB	Veratrum album; Veratrum album, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Veratrum album	
Veratrum album	Fresh, underground parts of Veratrum album L.			HAB 33c	Equisetum/Renes comp.; Skorodit comp.; Veratrum album ; Veratrum comp.	
Verbascum densiflorum	Fresh, unripe fruits of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7	Verbascum comp.	
Verbascum densiflorum	Fresh aerial parts of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol. without woody stems, collected at flowering time	HAB	Verbascum densiflorum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Veronica officinalis	Dried aerial parts of Veronica officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Veronica officinalis; Veronica officinalis, ethanol. Decoctum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%), APC 4.3	Lobelia comp.; Veronica officinalis	
Veronica officinalis	Fresh aerial parts of Veronica officinalis L., collected at flowering time			Ph. Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 33c	Veronica officinalis	
Viola tricolor	Fresh aerial parts of Viola tricolor L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Viola tricolor	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, HAB 33e	Tropaeolum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Virola sebifera	Fresh juice of Virola sebifera Aubl. obtained by incising the bark, and preserved with an approximately equal volume of ethanol (96 %) (Ph.Eur.)	HAB	Virola sebifera	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (see mon. HAB (sol. with ethanol 70%))	Myristica sebifera; Myristica sebifera comp.	
Viscum album ssp. abietis	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies species)			HAB 34g	Berberis/Prostata comp.	
Viscum album ssp. abietis	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC); fir)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. abietis	Dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch. (Host tree: Abies species)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 38	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. abietis	Fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (host tree: Abies species, fir)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 32, APC 7.2.	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. abietis	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (host tree: Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC); fir)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.3	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Populus species)			HAB 33f		
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; Apple tree)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh haustorium of Viscum album L ssp. album (Host tree: Malus species)			HAB 33e	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album	Dried plant including fruit, excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Oak species)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 38	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. album	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Crataegus species, Salix species, Malus domestica Borkh., Populus species, Tilia species)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 38	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum album ssp. album	Dried branches with leaves, flowers, fruit of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Malus species)			HAB 12g		
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; Apple tree)			HAB 34i	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryonia/Viscum comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Echinacea/Viscum; Echinacea/ Viscum comp.; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Equisetum/Viscum; Lens cristallina/ Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lilium tigrinum comp.; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.	
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Tiliae species; lime tree)			HAB 33f	Crataegus/Viscum	
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host trees: Acer species, maple; Amygdalus species, almond; Betula species, birch; Crataegus species, hawthorn; Fraxinus species, ash; Malus species, apple; Quercus species, oak)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 32, APC 7.2.	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. album	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host trees: Malus domestica Boekh., apple tree, Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl., oak, Ulmus caprinifolia Gled. [Ulmus campestris L.], Ulmus glabra Huds., elm)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.3, APC 7.2.4	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. austriacum	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus species)			HAB 34g		
Viscum album ssp. austriacum	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; Pine)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum album ssp. austriacum	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.)Vollm. (host tree: Pinus species)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 38	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. austriacum	Fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (host tree: Pinus species, pine)	APC	Viscum album	HAB 32, APC 7.2.	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Viscum album ssp. austriacum	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (host tree: Pinus sylvestris, pine)	APC	Viscum album	APC 7.2.3, APC 7.2.4	Viscum album	Vademecum 2017 Bd. 2
Vitex agnus-castus	whole, ripe, dried fruits of Vitex agnus-castus L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Agni castus fructus Ph.Eur.; Agnus-castus pph Ph.fr.; Vitex agnus-castus HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Vitis vinifera	Dried leaves of Vitis vinifera L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), API	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Fragaria/Vitis; Vitis comp.	
Vitis vinifera	see Acetum Vini destillatum see Acetum Vini see Spiritus e Vino see Tartarus crudus see White wine, Vitis vinifera					
White wine, Vitis vinifera L.	White wine, Vitis vinifera L.			Distillation (for preparing distillate of wine), raw material for the production of Ferrum-Quarz (see app. 2.6)		
Zingiber officinale	Dried, whole or cut rhizome of Zingiber officinale Roscoe, with the cork removed, either completely or from the wide, flat surfaces only	Ph.Eur.	Zingiberis rhizoma	Aqueous extract together with other herbal drugs	Gentiana/Zingiber comp.	

APPENDIX 2.3

List of starting materials of zoological origin

Explanations

Name of the substance:	pharmaceutical name of the animal organ or name of the animal used, if available name of the monograph (HAB/Ph.fr.: first name of the monograph, Ph.Eur.: latin name of the monograph).
Reference to Standard:	A main reference and a reference in brackets [e.g. Ph.Eur. (HAB)]: The monograph in the Ph.Eur. is the standard, but the remnant monograph in the HAB contains supplementary details, e.g. preparation methods (other than Ph.Eur.). If no reference is given company monograph exists.
Preparation method:	Methods for processing the substance and for other uses The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Additional Information, see p. 16-17 and pp. 87-90
Explanation to "*": see p. 85

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Acidum Formicae (Acidum formicicum e formica; Acidum Formicae venenum)	Aqueous solution of the secretion of wood ants of the subgenus Formica s. str. (e.g. Formica lugubris Zett., F. polyctena Förster, F. paralugubris Seifert or F. rufa L.), containing not less than 1.2% m/m of formic acid			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 3.1.2; D2 is standardized to 1.0% formic acid		Liste HAS (07.2021)
Acidum formicicum	Solution of formic acid (HCO_2H), obtained by distillation of tinctures of Formica rufa L.			Raw material for preparation of Calcarea formicica (see app. 2.4)	Vitis comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Ambra grisea	Substance produced in the digestive system of the sperm whale (Physeter catodon L. (Physeter macrocephalus L.))	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ambra grisea HAB; Ambra grisea PPH Ph.fr.	HAB Ambra grisea, Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (Ph.fr. ethanol 90%)	Zincum valerianicum comp.	
Amnion	Amnion from the bovine foetus (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Amnion
Anus	Anus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Aorta	Different sections of the aorta from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Atropa belladonna e radice]
Aorta	Aorta from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		IVAA statement 2013
Apis mellifica	Live worker honey bee (Apis mellifera L.)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Apis aph; Apis mellifica HAB	acc.to monograph (60-70% ethanol); HAB monograph; Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Apis comp.; Apis cum Levistico; Apis mellifica; Apis/Arnica; Apis/Arnica comp.; Apis/Belladonna; Apis/Belladonna/Mercurius; Apis/Berberis comp.; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Larynx comp.; Apis/Levisticum; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Arnica/Levisticum comp. ; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/Pulsatilla comp.; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Echinacea/Mercurius comp.; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.	
Apis regina	Whole queen cell with larvae and nourishing sap (Apis mellifera L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Apis regina comp.; Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Ovaria comp.; Testes comp.	
Apisinum	Dried poison from the honey bee (Apis mellifera L.)	HAB	Apisinum	Monograph	Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Zinnober comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Appendix vermiformis	Vermiform process of the blind gut from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Aranea avicularis	Whole bird spider (Avicularia avicularia L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Mygale comp.	IVAA statement 2013
Aranea diadema	Whole diadem spider (Araneus diadematus Clerk)	(HAB 1924)	Aranea Diadema	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9 (HAB 1924: 90% ethanol), 2.1.1, 2.2.3		Vademecum: Aranea
Arteria basilaris*	Arteria basilaris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria brachialis	Arteria brachialis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus	Parts from the Arteria carotis communis dextra and sinistra from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus
Arteria cerebri media*	Arteria carotis cerebralis and its ramifications from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria cerebri media
Arteria coeliaca	see Truncus coeliacus					IVAA statement 2013
Arteria coronaria	Arteria coronaria from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria coronaria
Arteria femoralis	Arteria femoralis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Secale/Bleiglanz comp.]
Arteria ophthalmica*	Arteria ophthalmica externa from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria ophthalmica
Arteria poplitea	Arteria poplitea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Bleiglanz/Secale comp.	
Arteria pulmonalis	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria renalis	Arteria renalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria vertebralis	Parts from the Arteria vertebralis dextra and sinistra from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		
Arteriae*	Parts of Arteria basilaris, Arteria brachialis, Arteria coronaria, Arteria femoralis, Arteria mesenterica, Arteria pulmonalis and Arteria renalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteriae

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Articulatio	The following articulations: cubits, genus, humeri, radiocarpa, sacroiliaca, subtalaris, talocruralis, temporomandibularis (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2, APC 3.3.1		Liste HAS (07.2021) ABMA-Vademecum: Articulatio-Argentum p. 49
Articulatio coxae	Hip joint with equal parts from the acetabulum, Caput femoris, joint cartilage and Ligamentum capitis femoris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Articulatio coxae	
Articulatio cubiti	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio genus	Knee joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, meniscus, joint capsule, ligaments, cartilage and synovia from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Articulatio genus	
Articulatio humeri	Shoulder joint with parts of the bones that form the joint, cartilage, parts of the joint capsule and the Bursa intertubercularis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Aconit Schmerzöl]
Articulatio interphalangea	Parts of the toe joint from the fore extremities from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Cartilago/Echinacea comp.	
Articulatio radiocarpea	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio sacroiliaca	Parts of Ilium and sacrum from the joint area, joint capsule and ligaments from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Articulatio subtalaris	Parts of the cartilage, joint capsule and synovia of the part distal to the Os centroquartale of the joint like union between Talus and Calcaneus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Articulatio talocruralis	Parts of the bones forming the joint, Tibia and Talus, of the joint capsule, ligaments as well as synovia of the ankle joint from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Articulatio talocruralis comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Articulatio temporomandibularis	Parts of the Os mandibulare and of the Os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intercarpeae	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ascidia	The whole animal (Several species of proto-Chordates of Ascidia group)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Arteriae-Barium p. 48
Atlas*	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Auditum	The whole hearing organ (parts of cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Auditum-Argentum p. 51
Auditum internum	Internal hearing organ (parts of cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear and labyrinthus from the calf (Bos taurus L.))			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Labyrinthus-Mercurius p. 161
Axis*	Parts of the Axis (2. cerivical) from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Bronchi	Bronchi from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	
Bronchi	Bronchi from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	
Bulbus olfactorius*	Bulbus olfactorius of both hemispheres of the cerebrum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Bulbus olfactorius
Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex	Parts of Bursa musculi infraspinam and Bursa intertubercularis humeri from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Calcarea carbonica ostrearum	see Conchae					
Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni	see Conchae					
Cantharis	As far as possible intact specimens of Lytta vesicatoria L., killed and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C	HAB	Lytta vesicatoria	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9 (HAB: ethanol 90%), 2.2.3	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula/ Urtica comp. ; Cantharis ; Cantharis comp. ; Hypericum comp.; Uva ursi comp.	Vademecum: Cantharis
Cardia	Cardia, parts of the wall of the stomach in the region of the entrance into the stomach from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Cardia
Cartilago	Cartilage of joint from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Cartilago articularis	Cartilage of the hip, knee and shoulder joints from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Cartilago comp. ; Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Cartilago/Mandragora comp.	
Cartilago articularis coxae	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Cartilago articularis genus	Cartilage of the knee joint from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Cavum tympani*	Parts of the wall of the Cavum tympani, as well as auditory bones from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Cavum tympani
Cera flava	Wax obtained by melting the walls of the honeycomb made by the honey-bee, Apis mellifera L., with hot water and removing foreign matter	Ph.Eur.	Cera flava	API	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Plantago comp.	
Cerebellum	Cerebellum from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cerebellum comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cerebellum*	Cerebellum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cerebellum comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Cerebrum	Cerebrum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			see app. 2.6: Arnica-Cerebrum	Arnica-Cerebrum	
Cerebrum, regio motorica*	Grey matter of the Gyrus praecentralis belonging to the Lobus frontalis of both hemispheres from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Cerebrum, regio motorica
Cervix uteri	Parts of the neck of the uterus from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Circulus arteriosus cerebri*	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Coccus cacti	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa	HAB; Ph.fr.	Dactylopius coccus HAB; Coccus cacti aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9 (HAB ethanol 90%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.	IVAA statement 2013
Cochlea*	Parts of the Cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Cochlea
Cod liver oil	see Iecoris aselli oleum					
Colon	Colon from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Colon	
Colon	Colon from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Colon sigmoideum	Colon sigmoideum, parts of the final tract of the Colon descendens from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Colon	Vademecum [mentioned under: Erysidoron® 1; Mercurius vivus naturalis]
Columna	Parts of spinal cord from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Columna-Argentum p. 97
Columna anterior*	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Columna posterior*	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Conchae	The inner parts of the shells of the oyster (Ostrea edulis L.; Ph.fr. also: Crasostrea angulata Lamk., Crasostrea gigas Lamk.)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni HAB; Calcarea carbonica ostrearum PPH Ph.fr.	HAB-Monograph and Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1., API (Apatit/Conchae)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Apatit/ Conchae; Avena comp. ; Avena/Conchae comp.; Barium comp. ; Bryophyllum/ Conchae ; Cerebellum comp. ; Conchae; Conchae comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Conchae/Quercus comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Fragaria/ Urtica comp.; Hepar sulfuris; Hepar sulfuris comp.; Levisticum comp.; Onopordum/Primula comp.; Pankreas comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Sepia comp.; Thyreoidea comp.; Urtica comp.; Valeriana comp.	Vademecum 4. Auflage (2017): Conchae; Bryophyllum 50%/ Conchae 50% aa
Conjunctiva	Conjunctiva from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Conjunctiva comp.	
Connective tissue	see Textus connectivus					
Cor	Cor from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Arnica, Planta tota/Cor ; Aurum/Cor; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Cor; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Organum quadruplex	
Cor	Parts of the epicardium, myocardium, endocardium and the arterial musculature of the heart from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Cor; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Organum quadruplex	
Cor	Cor from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Corallium	Fragmented parts obtained by communitung the fresh animal (Several species of Coral of the genus Mussidae or Coralliideae or Trachyphyliideae)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Corallium-Millefolium-Stibium Sirimim
Corallium rubrum	Fragments of the calcareous skeleton of Corallium rubrum L., containing minimum 82 % $CaCO_3$ (Mr 100.1)	HAB	Corallium rubrum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1; see also app. 2.6 (Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Corallium comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Cornea	Cornea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Cornea/Levisticum comp.	
Cornu Caprae ibecis	Horn from the ibex (Capra ibex L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		IVAA statement 2013
Cornu Cervi	Antlers from the deer (Cervus elaphus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Corpora quadrigemina	Parts of the Corpora quadrigemina from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Corpora quadrigemina*	Parts of the Lamina tecti with the Corpora quadrigemina from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Corpus amygdaloideum*	Brain matter of the region of the Corpus amygdaloideum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Corpus amygdaloideum
Corpus ciliare	Corpus ciliare from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Corpus luteum	Corpus luteum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Corpus luteum	Corpus luteum from the sow (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Corpus striatum*	Corpus striatum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Corpus vitreum	Corpus vitreum from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Corpus vitreum/Succinum	
Corpus vitreum*	Corpus vitreum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 2.2.2; starting material for the production of Argentum-Corpus vitreum and Corpus vitreum-Stannum (see app. 2.6)	Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Corpus vitreum/Succinum	
Cortex cerebri	Cortex of the cerebrum from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Crotalus horridus	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus horridus L.	HAB		HAB Monograph		Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Crotalus terrificus	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus durissus terrificus Laurenti			acc. to monograph Lachesis HAB	Naja comp.	Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297 Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(1)32-39
Cutis (feti femini)	The external skin of a ca. 5 months old female bovine foetus (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Cutis (feti)	The external skin of a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Cutis (feti)	The external skin from the foetus of the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Dactylopius coccus	see Coccus cacti					
Dens	Teeth from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Diaphragma	Muscular and tendinous parts of the diaphragm from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Diaphragma pelvis	Parts of the muscle and fascies closing the pelvis, including connective tissue from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Diaphragma pelvis
Diencephalon*	Diencephalon from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Disci intervertebrales	Intervertebral discs of cervical spine from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales)	Fibrocartilage of intervertebral discs of cervical spine from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales, thoracici et lumbales)	Parts of intervertebral discs of cervical, thoracic and lumbar spine from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Disci intervertebrales (feti)	Intervertebral discs of different regions of the spine from a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/ Solutio Siliceae comp.	Vademecum: Disci intervertebrales (feti)
Disci intervertebrales (lumbales)	Intervertebral discs of lumbar spine from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]
Ductus choledochus	Ductus choledochus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Ductus thoracicus	Ductus thoracicus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Borago/Renes comp.	
Duodenum	Parts of duodenum from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Plexus gastricus]
Dura mater encephali*	Dura mater encephali from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Endocardium	Endocardium from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Endometrium	Endometrium from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Endometrium comp.	
Endometrium	Endometrium from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Endometrium comp.	
Epididymis	Left epididymis from the bull (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Epiphysis	Parts of the epiphysis from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis; Epiphysis comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Gnaphalium comp.	
Epiphysis*	Parts of the epiphysis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis; Epiphysis comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Gnaphalium comp.	
Erytrocytes	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse (Equus przewalskii f. caballus POLIAKOV)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.4		IVAA statement 2013
Fasciculus atrioventricularis	Parts of the conduction system of the heart, Hiss bundle and Purkinjes fiber from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Fasciculus atrioventricularis
Fasciculus opticus*	Fasciculus opticus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Fel piscis	Bile from predatory fish, e.g. trout (Salmo trutta L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(3): 224

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Fel tauri	Fresh bile from gall bladder from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.	
Femur	Parts of the diaphysis of os femoris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Femur
Folliculi lymphatici aggregati	Parts of Peyers patch of the small intestine from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum
Formica	Live worker ants of Formica rufa L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Formica rufa HAB; Formica rufa PPH Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3 HAB monograph; dilutions Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9; Ph.fr. monograph (ethanol 65%) Extraction with glycerol 85% to get an API with 2.4% formic acid. see also Acidum Formicae	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Apis comp.; Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica, Planta tota/Formica; Arnica/Formica comp. ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Aurum/ Onopordon comp. ; Belladonna/Betula/ Formica ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Betula/ Lappa comp. ; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum arvense/Formica; Formica; Formica D3/Formica D15; Formica/Oxalis; Formica/Prunus spinosa; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Mandragora co	Vademecum: Formica
Formica parva	Live worker ants (Lasius niger L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Flores Tritici comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Funiculus umbilicalis	Funiculus umbilicalis from a bovine foetus between the third and ninth month of pregnancy (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp. ; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Galea aponeurotica	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Gingiva	Gingiva from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Gingiva	Gingiva from the foetus of the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Glandula lacrimalis	Glandula lacrimalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum
Glandula parotis	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenales	Suprarenal gland from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Glandula suprarenalis	Glandula suprarenalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Glandula suprarenalis; Glandula suprarenalis/ Solutio Ferri comp.; Glandulae suprarenales comp.	
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex) from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	Medulla glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis dextra	Glandula suprarenalis dextra from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis dextra	
Glandula suprarenalis sinistra	Glandula suprarenalis sinistra from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis sinistra; Glandula suprarenalis/Mercurius	
Glandula Thymus	see Thymus (Glandula)					
Glandula thyreoidea	Glandula thyreoidea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1, 2.1.1	Colchicum comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Glandula thyreoidea; Thyreoidea comp.	
Glandula thyreoidea	Glandula thyreoidea from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Colchicum comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Glandula thyreoidea; Thyreoidea comp.	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	Glandulae parathyreoideae from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Aurum/Parathyreoidea ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Pharmakolith comp.	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	Glandulae parathyreoideae from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1))	Aurum/Parathyreoidea ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Pharmakolith comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Glandulae suprarenales	see Glandula suprarenalis					
Globus oculi	Eyeball of the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Globe oculaire
Gyrus cinguli*	Gyrus cinguli from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Hepar	Pars intermedia of the liver from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp.; Hepar; Hepar-Magnesium; Hepar/Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/ Stannum metallicum B; Organum quadruplex; Taraxacum Stanno cultum/ Hepar Bovis	
Hepar	Liver from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp.; Hepar/Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/Stannum metallicum B; Organum quadruplex	IVAA statement 2013
Hippocampus*	Hippocampus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Hippocampus
Hirudo ex animale	Leech immediately after sacrifice of Hirudo medicinalis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11, 2.2.3	Hirudo comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Hypophysis	Hypophysis from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Aurum/Hypophysis comp.; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Hypophysis; Hypophysis comp.; Hypophysis/ Stannum; Magnesit/Mamma comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Skorodit comp.	
Hypophysis*	Hypophysis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Aurum/Hypophysis comp.; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Hypophysis; Hypophysis comp.; Hypophysis/ Stannum; Magnesit/Mamma comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Skorodit comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hypothalamus	Hypothalamus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Hypothalamus*	Hypothalamus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1		Vademecum: Hypothalamus
Iecoris aselli oleum	Purified fatty oil obtained from the fresh livers of wild cod, Gadus morhua L. and other species of Gadidae, solid substances being removed by cooling and filtering	Ph.Eur.	Iecoris aselli oleum	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp.	
Ileum	Ileum from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Nux vomica/ Nicotiana comp.]
Iris	Iris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Hypophysis comp.; Iris bovis comp.	
Jecoris oleum	see Iecoris aselli oleum					
Labyrinthus*	Cochlea and labyrinth from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Lac caninum	Fresh milk from female dog (Canis lupus familiaris L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1		ABMA-Vademecum Ovaria-Mercurius p. 195
Lac vaccae	Fresh cow's milk (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)		Vademecum
Lachesis	Carefully dried poison from Lachesis melanocephala Solno & Cerdas, Lachesis stenophrys Cope or Lachesis muta L.	HAB	Lachesis HAB; Lachesis muta aph Ph.fr.	Monograph HAB	Ignatia comp.; Lachesis; Lachesis comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Naja comp.	Vademecum: Lachesis Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Lamina quadrigemina	Lamina quadrigemina from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	
Lamina quadrigemina*	Lamina quadrigemina from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	
Lapis cancri	The gastrolithes from the body cavity from Astacus astacus L. or other crayfish			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1; API, raw material for the production of compositions: Silex - Lapis Cancri solutus (app. 2.6)	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	Vademecum: Silex - Lapis Cancri solutus Liste HAS (07.2021)

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Larynx	Parts of the larynx from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Larynx comp.	
Larynx	Parts of the larynx from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Larynx comp.	
Lathrodectus	Live spider of Lathrodectus mactans Koch			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Cor-Arsenicum album p. 105
Lens cristallina	Lens cristallina from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Iris bovis comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Lens cristallina	Lens cristallina from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Iris bovis comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Lien	Spleen from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			P.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.; Lien comp.; Lien/Plumbum	
Lien	Spleen from the rabbbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.; Lien comp.; Lien/Plumbum	
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	Parts of the Ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ligamentum longitudinale posterius*	Ligamentum longitudinale dorsale from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Ligamentum longitudinale posterius
Ligamentum vocale	Parts of the vocal cords included the mucous membrane of the larynx from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Larynx comp.]
Lingua	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Liquor cerebrospinalis	Cerebrospinalal fluid from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Lobus frontalis*	Frontal lobe of cerebrum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Lobus occipitalis*	Occipital lobe of cerebrum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Lobus parietalis*	Parietal lobe of the cerebrum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Lobus temporalis*	Temporal lobe from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Mamma	Glandular tissue from bovine udder (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Magnesit/Mamma comp.	
Mamma	Mammae from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Magnesit/Mamma comp.	
Mamma (dextra)	Glandular tissue from right part of bovine udder (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3, APC 3.3.1		Vademecum: Mamma ABMA-Vademecum: Mamma-Argentum Sirimim p. 169
Mamma (sinistra)	Glandular tissue from left part of bovine udder (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3, APC 3.3.1		Vademecum: Mamma ABMA-Vademecum: Mamma-Argentum p. 169
Mandibula (feti)	Mandible from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Mandibula (feti)	Mandible of the foetus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Marmot fat	see Marmottae oleum					
Maxilla (feti)	Maxilla from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Maxilla (feti)	Maxilla from a foetus of the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Medulla oblongata	Medulla oblongata from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Medulla oblongata*	Medulla oblongata from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Medulla ossium (rubra)	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Medulla ossium	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Medulla ossium (rubra)	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Medulla ossium	
Medulla spinalis	spinal cord from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	
Medulla spinalis tota*	Medulla spinalis of different sections from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	Vademecum: Medulla spinalis (tota)
Mel	Honey is produced by bees (Apis mellifera L.) from the nectar of plants or from secretions of living parts of plants which the bees collect, transform by combining with specific substances of their own, deposit, dehydrate, store and leave in the honey comb to ripen and mature.	Ph.Eur.	Mel	API, raw material for the production of several compositions (see app. 2.6).	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aqua Maris comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Avena/Conchae comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Ferrum/Acidum cholalicum; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica/Gentiana; Levisticum comp.; Lichenes comp.; Mel; Mercurialis/Mel; Solutio Sacchari comp.	
Membrana sinus frontalis	Mucosa of Sinus frontalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Cina comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Membrana sinus maxillaris	Mucosa of Sinus maxillaris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Membrana sinus paranasalis	Mucosa of sinus paranasales from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Hepar sulfuris comp.	Vademecum
Membrana synovialis	Inner layer of the joint capsule of different joints from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Salix/Rhus comp.]
Meniscus articularis	Meniscus articularis of the knee from calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Meniscus genus	Meniscus of the knee from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Mandragora comp.; Mandragora/Meniscus Genus	
Mephitis putorius	Liquid secretion of anal glands from Mephitis mephitis Schreb.	HAB 34	Mephitis putorius	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 90% acc. to HAB 34)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.	
Mesencephalon*	Mesencephalon from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mesenchym	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal (Bos taurus L.). Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchymal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thymus, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongious bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp.; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Lien comp.; Mesenchym; Vespa crabro comp.	
Mesenchym	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal (Sus scrofa domestica L.). Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchymal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thymus, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongious bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		Liste HAS (07.2021) Répertoire de méd. anthr.: T.R.E.
Mucosa buccalis	Mucous membranes of the following internal parts of the calfs (Bos taurus L.) mouth: Arcus glossopalatinus, A. pharyngopalatinus, gingiva, lingina, palatum, uvula and tonsilla palatinae			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Cydonia-Silicea p. 117
Mucosa sinusalis	Sinusal mucosa from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Muqueuse sinusale
Musculi	The following muscles of the ox (Bos taurus L., age 1,5-4 years): Musculus deltoideus, M. supraspinatus, M. infraspinatus, M. biceps brachii, M. triceps brachii, M. soleus and M. glutei			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Musculi-Aurum p. 178
Musculi glutaei	Gluteal muscles from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Musculus deltoideus-Komplex	Parts of the Musculus deltoideus-complex, Musculus supra spinam, Musculus infra spinam, Musculus deltoideus, Musculus biceps brachii and Musculus triceps brachii from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Musculus rectus abdominis	Musculus rectus abdominis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Musculus rectus abdominis

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Musculus soleus-Komplex	Parts of the Musculus soleus-Komplex, Musculus soleus, Musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, Musculus gastrocnemius from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Mygale	Live spider (Several species of the Theraphrosidae family)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Hepar-Plumbum p. 148
Mygale avicularis	see Aranea avicularis					
Myocardium	Myocardium from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Primula comp.	
Naja tripudians	Carefully dried poison from Naja naja L.	HAB	Naja naja	Monograph HAB	Naja comp.	Vademecum: Naja comp.
Nervi intercostales	Intercostal nerves from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus abducens*	Nervus abducens from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus accessorius	Nervus accessorius from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus facialis*	Nervus facialis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus femoralis	Nervus femoralis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus glossopharyngeus	Nervus glossopharyngeus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Nervus hypoglossus	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus ischiadicus	Nervus ischiadicus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Articulatio talocruralis comp.; Nervus ischiadicus	
Nervus ischiadicus	Nervus ischiadicus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Articulatio talocruralis comp.; Nervus ischiadicus	
Nervus laryngeus recurrens	Nervus laryngeus recurrens from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nervus laryngeus superior	Nervus laryngeus superior from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nervus medianus	Nervus medianus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus oculomotorius	Parts of the Nervus oculomotorius from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Nervus oculomotorius*	Nervus oculomotorius from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus ophtalmicus	Nervus ophtalmicus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.	
Nervus ophtalmicus	Parts of the Nervus ophtalmicus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.	
Nervus opticus	Nervus opticus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus opticus	Parts of Nervus opticus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. (2371) 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus opticus*	Nervus opticus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus parasympathicus	Nervus parasympathicus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1))		
Nervus peronaeus	Nervus peronaeus (fibularis) from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus phrenicus	Nervus phrenicus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Nervus phrenicus
Nervus pudendus	Nervus pudendus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus radialis	Nervus radialis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus statoacusticus	Nervus statoacusticus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1))	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Nervus statoacusticus*	Nervus statoacusticus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Nervus tibialis	Nervus tibialis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus trigeminus*	Nervus trigeminus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Nervus trigeminus	Vademecum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Nervus trochlearis*	Nervus trochlearis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Nervus ulnaris	Nervus ulnaris from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus vagus	Nervus vagus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nervus vagus	Nervus vagus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nodi lymphatici	Parts of lymph node tissue from different parts of the body from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nucleus ruber*	Brain substance from the nucleus ruber from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Oesophagus	Oesophagus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Ossa	Cleaned and milled bones from birds, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L.			Raw material for the production of Cissus-Ossa (see app. 2.6)	Cissus-Ossa	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Ossicula auditus*	Auditory bones from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ovaria	see Ovarium					
Ovarium	Ovary from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Argentum/Ovaria ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Ovaria comp.; Ovarium; Ovarium comp.	
Ovarium	Ovary from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Ovarium; Ovarium comp.	
Pancreas	Pancreas from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Pancreas	Pancreas from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	
Pancreas	Pancreas from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/ Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	
Papillae duodeni	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Parametrium	Tissue from the broad ligament of the uterus from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Parametrium dextrum	Tissue from the right broad ligament of the uterus from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pars fetalis (placenta)	Allantochorion from the bovine foetus (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Pars pallida*	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Patella	Patella from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Penis	Penis from the bull (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Pericardium	Pericardium from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum
Periodontium	Parts of the alveolar and dentals regions from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	Vademecum
Periodontium	Parts of the alveolar and dental regions from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Periosteum	Periosteum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Periosteum	Periosteum from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Peritonaeum	Peritonaeum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Bryonia/Viscum comp.	
Peritonaeum	Peritonaeum from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Bryonia/Viscum comp.	
Pharynx	Parts from the Pharynx digestorium and Pharynx respiratorius from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Pharynx
Physeter catodon	see Ambra grisea					
Physeter macrocephalus	see Ambra grisea					
Pia mater encephali*	Pia mater encephali from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Placenta	Placentomas from the pregnant cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Berberis/Sepia comp.; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Placenta/Tropaeolum	Glöckler
Pleura	Pleura parietalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus brachialis	Plexus brachialis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.]
Plexus cardiacus	Plexus cardiacus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus cardiacus
Plexus coeliacus	Plexus coeliacus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus coeliacus
Plexus gastricus	Plexus gastricus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus gastricus
Plexus haemorrhoidalis	Venous network in the region of the rectum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus haemorrhoidalis
Plexus lumbalis	Plexus lumbalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Plexus pelvinus	Plexus pelvinus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)	Plexus pulmonalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)
Plexus rectalis	see Plexus haemorrhoidalis					IVAA statement 2013

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Plexus sacralis	Plexus sacralis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pons*	Pons from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Propolis	Propolis (Apis mellifera L.)	Ph.fr.	Propolis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)		Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 338
Prostata	Prostata from the bull (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Berberis/Prostata comp.	
Pudendum feminium	Labia vulvae, clitoris and glandula vestibularis major from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Pulmo	Lung tissue from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Ferrum/Pulmo; Mercurius/ Pulmo; Organum quadruplex; Pulmo/ Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.	
Pulmo	Lung from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Ferrum/Pulmo; Mercurius/ Pulmo; Organum quadruplex; Pulmo/ Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.	
Pulpa dentis	Pulpa dentis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Pulpa dentis
Pylorus	Pylorus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Rectum	Rectum from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Regio substantiae nigrae*	Tissue from the substantia nigra from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Regio substantiae nigrae
Renes	Kidney from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Borago/ Renes comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Cuprum/Renes; Equisetum/ Renes comp.; Lien comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Organum quadruplex; Ren	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Renes	Kidney from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Borago/ Renes comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Cuprum/Renes; Equisetum/ Renes comp.; Lien comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Organum quadruplex; Ren	
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	Parts of tissue from the pelvis renalis and medulla renalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Reticuloendothelial System	Parts from the thymus gland, lymph nodes, bone marrow, liver and spleen from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Levico comp.]
Retina (et Chorioidea)	Parts of the retina and the chorioidea from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Retina; Retina comp.; Retina/Secale comp.	
Retina et Chorioidea	Parts of the retina and the chorioidea from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Chrysolith comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Lamina/Retina comp. ; Nervus opticus comp.; Resina Laricis/ Retina; Retina; Retina comp.; Retina/ Secale comp.	
Retina et Chorioidea*	Parts of the retina and the chorioidea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Chrysolith comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Lamina/Retina comp. ; Nervus opticus comp.; Resina Laricis/ Retina; Retina; Retina comp.; Retina/ Secale comp.	
Sclera*	Sclera from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Scolopendra	Living centipede of several species of Scolopendridae family			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Sinus facialis-Mercurius p. 238
Sepia officinalis	Dried ink bag from Sepia officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Sepia officinalis pph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 65% V/V); see also App. 2.7: Sepia Gruneris		Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Sepia officinalis e volumine bursae rec.	Fresh secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.	Vademecum: Sepia Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex*	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-Komplex; sinus cavernosus, nervus opticus, nervus oculomotorius, nervus trochlearis, nervus trigeminus and nervus abducens from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Spongia tosta	Toasted Euspongia officinalis L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Euspongia officinalis HAB; Spongia tosta pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9, (ethanol 70%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2)	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Colchicum comp.; Colchicum/Spongia comp.; Spongia; Spongia comp.	Vademecum: Spongia
Stomachus	Stomach from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Cichorium comp.	
Stomachus	see Ventriculus from the pig					
Sympathicus	see Truncus sympathicus					
Tendo	Tendo from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Tendo	Tendo from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		
Testa ovi	Shell of hen's eggs (Gallus gallus domesticus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Spongia comp.	
Testes	Testes from the bull (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Argentum/Testes ; Testes comp.	
Textus connectivus	Subcutaneous and intermuscular connective tissue, fascia, ligaments, tendons, as well as mesenterium from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp.	
Thalamus*	Thalamus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Thrombocytes	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse (Equus przewalskii f. caballus POLIAKOV)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.4		Vademecum: Thrombocyten
Thymus (Glandula)	Thymus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Glandula Thymus	
Thymus (Glandula)	Thymus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Glandula Thymus	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Tonsilla pharyngea	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Tonsillae palatinae	Tonsilla palatinae from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Calendula/Echinacea comp.	
Trabeculum*	Trabeculum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Raw material for the production of Trabeculum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Trabeculum comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Trachea	Trachea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Tractus digestivus	Equal parts of the complete digestive system from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Tractus digestivus-Cuprum p. 257
Trigonum vesicae et Musculus sphincter	Tissue of the vesica from the region of the trigonum vesicae and muscular tissue from the sphincter of the vesica from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Truncus cerebri	Brain stem from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Apis regina comp.; Hirnstamm/Triticum	
Truncus cerebri*	Parts from Hypothalamus, Thalamus, Corpora quadrigemina, Pons, Medulla oblongata and Cerebellum from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Apis regina comp.; Hirnstamm/Triticum	
Truncus coeliacus	Arteria coeliaca (truncus coeliacus) from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Truncus sympathicus	Truncus sympathicus from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.1		Vademecum: Sympathicus
Truncus sympathicus	Truncus sympathicus from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1))		Vademecum: Sympathicus
Tuba auditiva*	Tuba auditiva from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Tuba auditiva
Tuba uterina	Tuba uterina from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Tuba uterina	Tuba uterina from the (female) rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Tunica mucosa nasi	Tunica mucosa nasi from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	Vademecum
Tunica mucosa recti	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Tunica mucosa ventriculi	Mucosa from the different regions of the stomach from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.1		Vademecum
Ureter	Ureter from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Urethra feminina	Urethra from the female calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Urethra masculina	Urethra from the male calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Uterus	Uterus from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryophyllum comp.	
Uterus	Uterus from the (female) rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryophyllum comp.	
Uvea*	Uvea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Raw material for the production of Uvea comp. (see app. 2.6)		Liste HAS (07.2021: Uvea comp.)
Vagina	Vagina from the cow (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vaginae synoviales tendinum	Tendon sheaths from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Allium cepa/Tendo comp.	Vademecum
Vaginae synovialis tendinum	Tendon sheaths from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Allium cepa/Tendo comp.	
Valva trunci pulmonalis	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Valvula aortae	Valva aortae from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum
Valvula mitralis	Valva mitralis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Valvula tricuspidalis	Valva tricuspidalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena cava	Parts of the Vena cava cranialis and Vena cava caudalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vena cava	Parts of the vena cava from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Vena femoralis	Vena femoralis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena portae	Vena portae from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vena saphena magna	Vena saphena magna from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Vena saphena magna
Ventriculus	Ventriculus from the pig (Sus scrofa domestica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1, 2.2.3		Vademecum: Ventriculus
Vertebra cervicalis*	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra coccygea	Vertebra coccygea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra lumbalis*	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vesica fellea	Vesica fellea from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Ferrum/Vesica fellea	
Vesica urinaria	Vesica urinaria from the calf (Bos taurus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.2.3	Cantharis comp.	Vademecum
Vesica urinaria	Vesica urinaria from the rabbit (Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1	Cantharis comp.	
Vespa crabro	Live hornets (Vespa crabro L.)	HAB	Vespa crabro	Monograph, Dilutions acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9; Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Argentum comp.; Arnica, Planta tota/ Vespa Crabro ; Colchicum comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Vespa crabro; Vespa crabro comp.	Vademecum: Vespa crabro
Vespa vulgaris	Live worker wasps (Vespula germanica Fabricius, Vespula vulgaris L. and/or Dolichovespula saxonia Fabricius)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 2.1.1	Flores Tritici comp.	Liste HAS (07.2021)
Vipera berus	Freeze dried venom of Vipera berus L.			acc. to HAB monograph Lachesis	Naja comp.	

APPENDIX 2.4

Starting materials that can be described chemically

Explanations

Name of the substance:	Most widely accepted name of the substance used traditionally, if available name of the monograph (HAB/Ph.fr.: first name of the monograph, Ph.Eur.: latin name of the monograph).
Reference to Standard:	A main reference and a reference in brackets [e.g. Ph.Eur. (HAB)]: The monograph in the Ph.Eur. is the standard, but the remnant monograph in the HAB contains supplementary details, e.g. preparation methods (other than Ph.Eur.). If no reference is given company monograph exists.
Preparation method:	Methods for processing the substance and for other uses. The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Additional Information, see p. 18

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Acidum arsenicosum	see Arsenii trioxidum aph					
Acidum citricum	Citric acid	Ph.Eur.	Acidum citricum	excipient		
Acidum citricum monohydricum	Citric acid monohydrate	Ph.Eur.	Acidum citricum monohydricum	as raw material for the preparation for citrates of Fe and Ba	Berberis/Silicea comp.	
Acidum Formicae	see Appendix 2.3					
Acidum hexachloroplatinicum	Hexachloroplatinic acid, containing minimum 37.0 and maximum 41.0% of Pt (Ar 195.1)	HAB	Acidum hexachloroplatinicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.	
Acidum hydrochloricum	Acidum hydrochloridum dilutum (10%)	Ph.Eur.	Acidum hydrochloridum dilutum; Acidum hydrochloricum HAB	see monograph HAB (D2 with water, D3 with ethanol 50%); excipient	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.	
Acidum lacticum	Acidum lacticum	Ph.Eur.	Acidum lacticum	API	Majorana/Thuja comp.	
Acidum nitricum	Acidum nitricum	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Acidum nitricum	Starting material for preparation of Mixtura Stanni comp. (see app. 2.6) Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (see monograph HAB), 3.1.2	Mixtura Stanni comp.	
Acidum phosphoricum	Acidum phosphoricum dilutum (10%)	Ph.Eur.	Acidum phosphoricum dilutum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 3.1.2	Acidum phosphoricum; Apis regina/ Aurum comp.	
Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Ph.Eur.	Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Apis regina/Aurum comp.	
Acidum silicicum	Precipitated silicon dioxide	DAB	Siliciumdioxid, gefälltes	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API, raw material for production		
Acidum sulfuricum	95-100.5% H_2SO_4	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Acidum sulfuricum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (see monograph HAB), raw material for the production of starting materials		
Acidum tartaricum	Tartaric acid of natural origin, obtained by extraction of lees during wine making.	Ph.Eur.	Acidum tartaricum	raw material for the preparation of Solutio Ferri comp. (app. 2.6)	Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aesculinum	Aesculin	DAB; HAB	Aesculin (DAB); Aesculinum (HAB)	Liquid dilution see Aesculinum HAB (Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90%), Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Echinacea/Prunus comp.	
Aethiops antimonialis	see Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulfuratum				Aethiops antimonialis	
Alumen	Alumen with 99.0-100.5% $AlK(SO_4)_2$, 12 H_2O	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Alumen; Aluminium-kalium-sufuricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with water) (see monograph HAB); Starting material for preparation of Mixtura Stanni comp. (see app. 2.6) 4.1.1	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Mixtura Stanni comp.	
Alumen chromicum	Potassium chromium(III) sulfate dodecahydrate			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Alumen chromicum
Aluminium-kalium-sulfuricum	see Alumen					
Ammoniae solutio concentrata	25-30% NH_3	Ph.Eur.	Ammoniae solutio concentrata	raw material for the production of starting materials		
Ammonium carbonicum	Mixture of ammonium hydrogen carbonate and ammonium carbamate of varying proportions	Ph.Eur.	Ammonium carbonicum aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)	Echinacea comp.	
Antimonium tartaricum	see Kalium stibyltartaricum					
Argenti carbonas	Silver carbonate, 99-100.5% Ag_2CO_3			see Appendix 2.6, e.g. Viscum Mali cum Argento	Viscum album c. Arg	
Argenti nitras	Silver nitrate, 99.0-100.5% $AgNO_3$	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Argenti nitras; Argentum nitricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (water) see Argentum nitricum HAB; raw material for preparation of Argentum-Corpus vitreum (see app, 2.6) and an excipient (preservative)	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Argentum nitricum ; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Calendula/ Echinacea comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Myristica sebifera comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Phytolacca comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Robinia comp. ; Salvia comp.; Silicea comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Argentum colloidale	Colloidal silver, a silver preparation with a protective colloid coating of soluble protein	HAB	Argentum colloidale	see monograph HAB	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Majorana/ Thuja comp.	
Argentum metallicum	99.0-100.5% Ag	HAB; Ph.fr.	Argentum metallicum HAB; Argentum metallicum aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, Ph.fr. (see monograph)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Argentum comp.; Argentum metallicum ; Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Argentum/ Berberis comp.; Argentum/Echinacea; Argentum/Hyoscyamus ; Argentum/ Ovaria ; Argentum/Pancreas ; Argentum/ Quarz ; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Argentum/Rohrzucker ; Argentum/ Secale ; Argentum/Stibium ; Argentum/ Testes ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Bryophyllum comp. ; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Conchae comp.; Conjunctiva comp.; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Echinacea/ Mercurius comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Endometrium comp.; Ovaria comp.; Rosmarinus comp.; Testes comp. ; Thuja comp.	
Arsenicum album	Arsenii trioxidum	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Arsenicum album aph; Acidum arsenicosum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, solution acc. to monograph HAB	Arsenicum album ; Bolus alba comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Colchicum comp.	
Aurum chloratum	Hydrogen tetrachloroaurate(III) trihydrate	HAB	Aurum chloratum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Apis regina/Aurum comp.	
Aurum chloratum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum					

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aurum metallicum	Powdered gold	HAB; Ph.fr.	Aurum metallicum HAB; Aurum metallicum aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Arnica, Planta tota/Aurum ; Aurum comp. ; Aurum metallicum; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Aurum/Cor; Aurum/ Crataegus; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Equisetum ; Aurum/Ferrum sidereum ; Aurum/Hyoscyamus comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Aurum/ Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa ; Aurum/ Onopordon comp. ; Aurum/ Parathyreoidea ; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Prunus ; Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Aurum/Stibium; Aurum/Strophanthus kombe ; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Crataegus comp. ; Disci comp. cum Auro; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Medulla spinalis comp.; Pankreas comp.; Sarothamnus comp.; Stannum comp.; Strophanthus comp.	
Aurum metallicum foliatum				Raw material for the preparation of Myrrha comp. (see app. 2.6)		
Aurum muriaticum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum					
Aurum naturale	see Appendix 2.1					
Aurum sulfuratum	Mixture of gold(I)- and gold(III) sulfide			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (then 3.1.1 or 3.1.2), 4.1.2		
Barium citricum	Barium citrate with different amounts of crystal water: $Ba_3(C_6H_5O_7)_2$*n H_2O (n = 5-7)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barium citricum; Barium comp. ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Vespa crabro comp.	
Barium iodatum	Barium iodide monohydrate	HAB	Barium iodatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barium jodatum ; Echinacea comp.	
Bismuthum pph	see Bismutum subnitricum					
Bismutum metallicum	Metallic bismuth with 99.0-101.0% Bi	HAB	Bismutum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Bismutum/Stibium; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Bismutum subnitricum	Bismuth subnitrate, heavy, with 71.0-74.0% Bi	Ph.Eur.	Bismuthi subnitras ponderosus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna	
Borax	Disodium tetraborate decahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Borax; Natrium tetraboracicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2, excipient		
Calcarea formicica	Calcium formate, obtained from Conchae and formic acid (Acidum formicicum), distilled from Formica tinctures (Formica rufa L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Vitis comp.	
Calcarea phosphorica	Mixture of calcium phosphates	Ph.Eur.	Tricalcii phosphas; Calcarea phosphorica pph Ph.fr	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Calcarea phosphorica
Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihydricus	Calcium hydrogene phosphate dihydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihydricus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Calcii hydroxidum	Calcium hydroxide	Ph.Eur.	Calcii hydroxidum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Causticum Hahnemanni		
Calcii lactas	Calcium bis(2-hydroxypropanoate) or mixture of the calcium (2R)-, (2S)- and (2RS)-2-hydroxypropanoates	Ph.Eur.	Calcii lactas	API	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
Calcii oxidum	Freshly burnt lime or marble			raw material for the preparation of Calcium silicicum comp. (see app. 2.6)		
Calcium stibiato-sulfuratum	A mixture, prepared by melting stibium sulfuratum nigrum, sulfur and conchae together	HAB	Calcium stibiato-sulfuratum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Camphora	D-Camphor	Ph.Eur.	D-Camphora	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 70%), 3.1.2, HAB 12i, API	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Camphora ; Camphora/Hypericum ; Oleum camphoratum comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Sarothamnus comp.; Skorodit comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Causticum Hahnemanni	A substance, prepared according to the monograph Causticum Hahnemanni HAB	HAB	Causticum Hahnemanni	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (see mon. HAB)		
Cerussa	see Plumbum carbonicum					
Chlorophyllum	The green plant pigment (green of leaves).			API	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
Cinnabaris	see Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum or Cinnabar in Appendix 2.1					
Cobaltum metallicum	Metallic cobalt, containing 98.5-100.5% Co	HAB	Cobaltum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cobaltum metallicum	
Copper tetrammine sulfate monohydrate	Prepared from copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate and concentrated ammonia solution.			Raw material for the preparation of Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenaes (see app. 2.6)	Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	
Creosotum	see Kreosotum					
Cupri acetas monohydricus aph	Copper(II) acetate monohydrate	Ph.Eur.	Cuprum aceticum aph; Cuprum aceticum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (solution according to monograph HAB, ethanol 50%), 3.1.2, 4.1.1	Borago/Renes comp. ; Cuprum aceticum; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum aceticum/Zincum valerianicum; Echinacea/Viscum comp.	
Cupri sulfas pentahydricus	Copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Cupri sulfas pentahydricus; Cuprum sulfuricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with water, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cina comp.; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum ; Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum/ Eucalyptus; Trabeculum comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Cupro-Stibium	Alloy of 1 part of copper and 1 part of antimony			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Cuprum citricum	Copper(II) citrate 2,5 hydrate			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprum citricum	
Cuprum metallicum aph	98.0-102.0% Cu	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Cuprum aph Cuprum metallicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Cuprum metallicum; Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis dextra; Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis sinistra; Cuprum/Nicotiana; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Cuprum/Renes; Cuprum/Stibium; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Mixtura Stanni comp.	
Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum	Copper(I) oxide			API	Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum; Cuprum/ Nicotiana	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus	Disodium phosphate dodecahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus; Natrium phosphoricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Robinia comp.	
Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus	Dried ferrous sulfate with limit values for Mn (0.5 %) and Zn (150 ppm) different from those for Ferrous sulfate, dried Ph.Eur.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, starting material for the preparation of Ferrum/Quarz (see app. 2.6), API	Ferrum/Quarz ; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Ovarium comp.	
Ferrosi sulfas heptahydricus	Ferrous sulfate heptahydrate with limit values for Mn (0.5 %) and Zn (150 ppm) different from those for Ferrous sulfate heptahydrate Ph.Eur.			API for the preparation of Ferrum-Quarz (app. 2.6)	Cinis Capsellae comp.; Ferrum/Quarz	
Ferrum aph	Iron fhp (obtained by reduction or sublimation)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ferrum aph; Ferrum metallicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1; 4.1.2, starting material for preparation of Ferrum pomatum (see app. 2.6)	Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Ferrum metallicum; Ferrum praeparatum comp.; Ferrum/Anisum; Ferrum/Pulmo; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Ferrum/Vesica fellea	Der Merkurstab 2014; 67(4)270-282
Ferrum citricum	Iron(III) citrate, containing not less than 18.0 and not more than 20.0 % of Fe (Ar 55.85)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)		
Ferrum hydroxydatum	see Appendix 2.6 (Ferrum hydroxydatum)					
Ferrum metallicum reductum	Iron obtained by reduction of the mineral siderite	(HAB)	Ferrum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Ferrum hydroxydatum (app. 2.6)		
Ferrum phosphoricum	Hydrated iron(III) phosphate, containing 34.0-37.0% Fe (Ar 55.85)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ferrum phosphoricum HAB; Ferri phosphas aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ferrum phosphoricum; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Ferrum sesquichloratum	Aqueous solution of iron(III) chloride hexahydrate with 9.8-10.3% Fe	HAB	Ferrum sesquichloratum solutum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 and D2 acc. to mon HAB!)	Ferrum praeparatum comp.	
Ferrum ustum	Complex Iron(II, III) oxide - obtained by glowing and forging metallic iron - containing not less than 71.0 and not more than 75.0 % of Fe (Ar 55.85)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum	Iron(III) potassium tartrate dehydrate (Ferric potassium tartrate)			starting material for preparation of Solutio Ferri comp. and Solutio Sacchari comp. (see app. 2.6)	Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.	
Glonoinum	see Nitroglycerinum					
Hepar sulfuris	Substance prepared in glowing a mixture from equal parts of Sulfur and Conchae (Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni)	HAB	Hepar sulfuris (Hepar sulfuris calcareum)	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Hepar sulfuris; Hepar sulfuris comp.; Lachesis comp.	
Hepar sulfuris kalinum	see Kalium sulfuratum					
Hydrargyri sulfas	Mercury(II) sulfate, 99-100.5% $HgSO_4$			raw material for preparation of e.g. Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro (see app. 2.6)		
Hydrargyrum bichloratum	99.5-100.5% $HgCl_2$	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Hydrargyri dichloridum; Hydrargyrum bichloratum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Hydrargyrum bicyanatum	Mercury(II) cyanide	HAB	Hydrargyrum bicyanatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Mercurius cyanatus	
Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Mercury(II) iodide	HAB	Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D3 with ethanol 90%), 4.1.1; 4.1.2, starting material for preparation of Trabeculum comp. (app. 2.6)	Trabeculum comp.	
Hydrargyrum chloratum	Mercury(I) chloride	HAB; Ph.fr.	Hydrargyrum chloratum HAB; Hydrargyri chloridum Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Lycopodium comp.; Mercurius dulcis	
Hydrargyrum metallicum	Mercury with 99.5-100.5% Hg	HAB; Ph.fr.	Hydrargyrum metallicum HAB; Mercure métallique pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Hirudo comp.; Mercurius vivus; Mercurius/Pulmo	
Hydrargyrum nitricum oxydulatum	Mercury(I) nitrate dihydrate	HAB	Hydrargyrum nitricum oxydulatum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; for the preparation of Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum	Red mercury(II)sulfide	HAB; Ph.fr.	Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum HAB; Mercurique (sulfure) rouge pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1; raw material for preparation of Hydrarg. sulf. rubr. D5 in oil	Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Oleum rhinale	
Jodum	Iodine with 99.5-100.5% I	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Iodum Iodum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 90% acc. to mon. HAB); raw material for preparation of Sulfur iodatum	Jodum	
Kalii bichromas	Kalium bichromicum fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii bichromas aph; Kalium bichromicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with water acc. to mon. HAB), 3.1.2	Kalium bichromicum; Myristica sebifera comp.	
Kalii carbonas	Potassium carbonate with 99.0-101.0% dried substance	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii carbonas; Kalium carbonicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2; starting material for preparation of Kalium aceticum comp. and Solutio Ferri comp. (see app. 2.6)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Kalium carbonicum; Kalium/Teucrium comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	
Kalii chloridum	Potassium chloride	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii chloridum; Kalium chloratum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18% acc. to mon. HAB), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Kalium muriaticum
Kalii dihydrogenophosphas	Potassium dihydrogene phosphate	Ph.Eur.	Kalii dihydrogenophosphas	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Berberis/Hypericum comp. ; Juglans regia comp.; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Lilium tigrinum comp.	
Kalii hydrogenotartras	Potassium hydrogene tartrate	Ph.Eur.	Kalii hydrogenotartras	Raw material for the preparation of Tartarus stibiatus and Solutio ferri comp. (app. 2.6)		
Kalii iodidum	Potassium iodide	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii iodidum; Kalium iodatum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Kalii nitras	Potassium nitrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii nitras; Kalium nitricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 18% acc. to mon. HAB), 4.1.1; starting material for preparation of Silex - Lapis cancri solutus (app. 2.6), excipient		
Kalii sulfas	Potassium sulfate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Kalii sulfas; Kalium sulfuricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D1 with water acc. to mon. HAB), starting material for preparation of Kalium sulfuricum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Kalium/Teucrium comp.	
Kalium carbonicum e cinere Fagi	Potassium carbonate, prepared from the ash of beechwood (Fagus sylvatica L.)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.	
Kalium stibyltartaricum	Potassium di-μ-tartratobis[antimonate(III)] trihydrate, 98.0-103.0% $C_8H_4K_2O_{12}Sb_2, 3H_2O$	HAB	Kalium stibyltartaricum HAB; Kalii antimoniotartras aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; liquid solutions acc. to mon. HAB or Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Phosphorus/Tartarus stibiatus; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.; Tartarus stibiatus; Tartarus stibiatus comp.	
Kalium sulfuratum	Crude potash, containing a mixture of mainly potassium trisulfide and potassium metabisulfite (dipotassium pyrosulfite)	DAB 6	Kalium sulfuratum - Schwefelleber DAB 6	API	Kalium sulfuratum	Vademecum: Kalium sulfuratum (ext.)
Kalium-Eisen-Tartrat	see Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum					
Kreosotum	Mixture of guaiacol, creosol and cresolen obtained by distillation of beech (Fagus sylvatica L.) tar containing minimum 65.0 and maximum 78.0 per cent total phenolics, calculated as pyrogallol	HAB	Kreosotum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (with ethanol 90%, see monograph)	Kreosotum; Majorana/Thuja comp.	
Liquor natrii silicici	see Natrii silicici, Liquor		Liquor natrii silicici - Natronwasserglaslösung			
Lithii carbonas	Lithium carbonate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Lithii carbonas; Lithium carbonicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with water acc. to mon. HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Magnesii chloridum hexahydricus	Magnesium chloride hexahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Magnesii chloridum hexahydricus; Magnesium chloratum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1; raw material for the preparation of Hepar-Magnesium (app. 2.6)		
Magnesii hydrogenophosphas trihydricus aph	Magnesium phosphoricum fhp, 98.0-102.0% $MgHPO_4, 3\ H_2O$	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Magnesii hydrogenophosphas trihydricus aph; Magnesium phosphoricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; starting material for preparation of Cinis e fructibus Avenae cum Magnesio phosphoricum (1:1)(see app. 2.6)	Cor/Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	
Magnesii hydroxidum	Magnesium hydroxide	Ph.Eur.	Magnesii hydroxidum	Raw material for preparation of e.g. Hepar-Magnesium(see app. 2.6)	Hepar-Magnesium	
Magnesii sulfas heptahydricus	Magnesiium sulfate heptahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Magnesii sulfas heptahydricus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.	
Magnesium metallicum	Metallic magnesium	HAB	Magnesium metallicum	API		
Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 20%	Aqueous solution of magnesium dihydrogen phosphate (20 %)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum/ Tabacum; Onopordon comp./ Magnesium phosphoricum acidum	
Mercurius auratus	Gold-mercury alloy, containing at least 32.0 and not more than 35.0 % Au (Ar 196.97) and at least 65.0 and not more than 68.0 % Hg (Ar 200.59)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Mercurius bijodatus	see Hydrargyrum biiodatum					
Mercurius cyanatus	see Hydrargyrum bicyanatum					
Mercurius dulcis	see Hydrargyrum chloratum					
Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni	A mixture of mainly mercury(II)amidonitrate and metallic mercury with 86.0-90.0% Hg	HAB	Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni HAB; Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni aph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apis/Belladonna/Mercurius; Echinacea/ Mercurius comp.; Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mercurius sublimatus corrosivus	see Hydrargyrum bichloratum (Hydrargyrum dichloridum)					
Mercurius vivus	see Hydrargyrum metallicum					
Minium	Minium [Lead(II,IV) oxide]	HAB	Minium	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Minium	
Natrii carbonas decahydricus	Sodium carbonate decahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Natrii carbonas decahydricus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (water), 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of zincum isovalerianicum	Levisticum comp.	
Natrii carbonas monohydricus	Sodium carbonate monohydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Natrii carbonas monohydricus; Natrium carbonicum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (water), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cerebellum comp. ; Fragaria/Urtica comp.	
Natrii chloridum	Sodium chloride	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Natrii chloridum; Natrium chloratum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Natrii silicici, Liquor	Aqueous solution of sodium polysilicate with 7.5 - 8.5% sodium oxide (Na_2O) and 25.5 - 28.5% silcicum dioxide (SiO_2)	DAB 6	Liquor natrii silicici - Natronwasserglaslösung	Raw materiel for preparation of e.g. Uvea comp. (see app. 2.6)		
Natrii sulfas anhydricus	Anhydrous sodium sulfate	Ph.Eur.	Natrii sulfas anhydricus; Natrium sulfuricum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 18% acc. to monograph HAB), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for preparing Kalium sulfuricum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Lycopodium comp.	
Natrii tetrachloroauras dihydricus aph	Aurum chloratum natronatum fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Natrii tetrachloroauras dihydricus aph; Natrium tetrachloroauratum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (water, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Aurum muriaticum natronatum
Natrium phosphoricum	see Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus	HAB				
Natrium tetraboracicum	see Borax	Ph.Eur.				
Nitricum acidum pph	see Acidum nitricum					
Nitroglycerinum	Solution of glycerol trinitrate (1 %) in ethanol 96 %	HAB	Glyceroli trinitratis solutio Ph.Eur.; Nitroglycerinum HAB	HAB: The substance is identical with D2; further potencies with ethanol 50%	Glonoinum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Petroleum aph	Petroleum spirit distilling between 180 and 220 C obtained by rectification of crude oil	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Petroleum aph; Petroleum rectificatum HAB	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90% according to monograph HAB), API	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Petroleum	
Phosphoricum acidum pph	see Acidum phosphoricum concentratum					
Phosphorus	Yellow phosphorus	HAB	Phosphorus	see Phosphorus HAB (D3 with anhydrous ethanol), API (e.g. 0.1% in oil)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Apatit/ Phosphorus comp.; Avena comp. ; Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Bryonia/ Gelsemium comp. ; Equisetum comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.; Meteoreisen/ Phosphor/Quarz; Oleum Petrae comp.; Phosphorus; Phosphorus/Malva ; Phosphorus/Sulfur ; Phosphorus/ Tartarus stibiatus; Sambucus/Teucrium comp.; Valeriana comp.	
Phosphorus metallicus (niger)	Black metallic phosphorus			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Platinum chloratum	see Acidum hexachloroplatinicum					
Platinum metallicum	Metallic platin	HAB	Platinum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 (D2), 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Platina
Plumbi carbonas	Basic lead(II) carbonate			Raw material for preparation of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC (see app. 2.6)	Cinis Capsellae comp.	
Plumbum aceticum	Lead(II) acetate trihydrate	HAB	Plumbum aceticum	Liquid solution acc. to monograph HAB and Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1; 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Plumbum aceticum/Mel comp.
Plumbum jodatum	Lead(II) iodide			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API		
Plumbum metallicum	Metallic lead	HAB	Plumbum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Plumbum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Lien comp.; Lobelia comp.; Onopordon comp./Plumbum ; Plumbum mellitum ; Plumbum metallicum; Plumbum/Stannum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Plumbum silicicum	Lead(II) meta silicate, obtained by smelting cerussite and quartz			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Plumbum silicicum	Vademecum
Saccharum	β-D-Fructofuranosyl-α-D-glucopyranosid (not in the Ph.Eur.: Sucrose obtained from the stems of Saccharum officinarum L.)	Ph.Eur.	Saccharum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2, raw material for preparation of e.g. Plumbum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Anis-Pyrit ; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Argentum/Rohrzucker ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Plumbum mellitum	
Saccharum candidum	Crystals, which develop by solving and crystallizing sucrose			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Spongia comp.	
Silicea	see Acidum silicicum					
Silicea colloidalis	Colloidal silica, directly obtained in the manufacture of the finished product by reaction of adjusted amounts of aqueous solutions of sodium silicate and citric acid monohydrate.			API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Rosae aetheroleum/Silicea colloidalis comp. ; Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Stannosi chloridum dihydricum	Stannous chloride dihydrate	Ph.Eur.	Stannosi chloridum dihydricum	Starting material for preparation of stannum hydroxydatum (see app. 2.6, Hepar-Stannum)		
Stannum hydroxydatum	Tin(II) hydroxide			Raw material for preparation of e.g. Hepar-Stannum (see app. 2.6)	Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Hepar-Stannum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Stannum metallicum	Metallic tin	HAB	Stannum metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for preparation of Stannum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Apatit/ Stannum; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Bryonia/Stannum ; Bryonia/Viscum comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Cina comp.; Conchae/Quercus comp.; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci/ Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/ Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum/ Stannum ; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hepar/ Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/Stannum metallicum B; Hypericum comp.; Hypophysis/Stannum; Juglans regia comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lilium tigrinum comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Meniscus Genus/Stannum ; Mercurius vivus comp.; Mixtura Stanni comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Plumbum/Stannum; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Scilla comp.; Senecio comp.; Stannum comp.; Stannum metallicum ; Stannum/Succinum <	
Stibium arsenicosum	Mixture of equal parts of antimony(V)oxide and arsenic(III)oxide	HAB	Stibium arsenicosum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Stibium arsenicosum	
Stibium metallicum		HAB	Stibium metallicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Argentum/Stibium ; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Aurum/Hyoscyamus comp. ; Aurum/Stibium; Bismutum/Stibium; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Calendula/Stibium ; Cichorium comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Cuprum/ Stibium; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Hamamelis comp.; Marmor/Stibium; Medulla spinalis comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.; Ovarium comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.; Stibium comp. ; Stibium metallicum; Strophanthus comp.; Tormentilla comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	Mixture of antimony(V) sulfide and sulfur	HAB	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Sulfur	Sulfur with 99.0-101.0% S	Ph.Eur.	Sulfur	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API (for ointments)		
Sulfur aph	Sulfur fhp - obtained by sublimation	Ph.Eur.	Sulfur aph	Liquid solutions acc. to monograph HAB (D4); Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API; raw material for preparation of Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum (see app. 2.6)	Avena comp. ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur ; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Hepar sulfuris; Phosphorus/Sulfur ; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.; Sulfur; Valeriana comp.	
Sulfur iodatum	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 70-80% I)	HAB	Sulfur iodatum HAB	Liquid solutions acc. monograph HAB (D3); Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Sulfur iodidum aph	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 75-82% I)	Ph.fr.	Sulfur iodidum aph	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Sulfur selenosum	Mixture obtained by melting 1 part of selen with 99 parts of sulfur.			Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Sulfur selenosum
Sulfuricum acidum pph	see Acidum sulfuricum					
Tartarus depuratus	Purified cream of tartar, mainly consisting of potassium hydrogen tartrate			Only used as a raw material e.g. for production of Tartarus stibiatus		
Tartarus stibiatus	see Kalium stibyltartaricum					
Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate	see Copper tetrammine sulfate monohydrate					
Zincum isovalerianicum	Zinc isovalerate dihydrate with 98-103% $Zn(C_5H_9O_2), 2H_2O$	HAB	Zincum isovalerianicum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol acc. to monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprum aceticum/Zincum valerianicum; Zincum valerianicum; Zincum valerianicum comp.	Vademecum
Zincum metallicum	Metallic zinc with 97.0-100.5 (HAB) or 99.5-101.5% (Ph.fr.) Zn	HAB; Ph.fr.	Zincum metallicum HAB; Zincum metallicum pph Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Zincum valerianicum	see Zincum isovalerianicum					

APPENDIX 2.5

Starting materials that have undergone special treatment (vegetabilisation methods)

Explanations

Name of the substance:	Binomial name of the plant if available provided in the definition of the monograph, if available followed by the latin name of the substance used in the cultivation together with the short term for the treatment (e.g. Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum).
Reference to Standard:	(HAB): the plant (not the substance) is described in the HAB If no reference is given company monograph exists.
Preparation method:	Methods for processing the substance and for other uses.

Additional Information, see p. 18

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Aconitum napellus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1	Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum	
Atropa belladonna Cupro culta	Whole fresh plants of Atropa bella-donna L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		
Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento cultum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Bryophyllum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1	Bryophyllum Argento cultum	Vademecum: Bryophyllum Argento cultum
Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio cultum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Bryophyllum	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1	Bryophyllum Mercurio cultum	Vademecum: Bryophyllum Mercurio cultum
Chamomilla recutita Cupro culta	Fresh underground parts of Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.9, 1.2.11, 1.5.1	Chamomilla Cupro culta, Radix	Vademecum: Chamomilla Cupro culta, Radix
Chelidonium majus Ferro cultum	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Chelidonium majus	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1	Chelidonium Ferro cultum	Vademecum: Chelidonium Ferro cultum
Cichorium intybus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Cichorium intybus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1	Cichorium Plumbo cultum	Vademecum: Cichorium Plumbo cultum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Cichorium intybus Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1	Cichorium Stanno cultum	Vademecum: Cichorium Stanno cultum
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum, Radix	Fresh root of Cichorium intybus L. (var, intybus and/or var. sativum DC), collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7	Cichorium Stanno cultum	
Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum	Fresh green sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.2 (using a diluted silicate containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Equisetum arvense Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.7, 1.5.1 (see monograph Equisetum arvense Rh HAB!)	Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum	Vademecum
Hypericum perforatum Auro cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Hypericum perforatum ex herba; Hypericum perforatum Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1	Aqua Maris comp.; Hypericum Auro cultum	Vademecum : Hypericum Auro cultum
Kalanchoe pinnatum Argento culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento culta					
Kalanchoe pinnatum Mercurio culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio culta					
Melissa officinalis Cupro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Melissa officinalis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1	Melissa Cupro culta	Vademecum
Nasturtium officinale Mercurio cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Nasturtium officinale	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum	Vademecum: Nasturtium Mercurio cultum
Nicotiana tabacum Cupro culta	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Nicotiana tabacum Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1	Tabacum Cupro cultum	Vademecum: Tabacum Cupro cultum

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Oenothera Argento culta	Fresh aerial parts of Oenothera biennis L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB 1924)	Oenothera biennis	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3		Vademecum: Oenothera Argento culta Jachens: Dermatologie. Salumed Verlag 2012, pp 386-391.
Primula veris Auro culta	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.1	Primula Auro culta ; Primula Auro culta comp.	Vademecum: Primula Auro culta
Taraxacum officinale Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Taraxacum officinale; Taraxacum officinaleRh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1	Taraxacum Stanno cultum	Vademecum: Taraxacum Stanno cultum
Thuja occidentalis Argento culta	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Thuja occidentalis; Thuja occidentalis Rh	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5, 1.5.2	Thuja occidentalis Argento culta	
Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Urtica dioica	Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3, 1.5.1	Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Vademecum: Urtica dioica Ferro culta
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Cinis	see Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae (app. 2.7)					
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Radix	Fresh underground parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1; for the preparation of Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae (app. 2.5)	Urtica dioica Ferro culta	

APPENDIX 2.6

List of compositions

Explanations

A non-comprehensive inventory of composed substances, for which the preparation method is not described elsewhere.

For definition of the ingredients, see the relevant appendix.

Name of the substance: Name of the composition in the KC Monograph, if available. Otherwise, the commercial name of the pharmaceutical product.

Preparation method: Methods for preparation of the composition and for processing of the composition.

The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Additional Information, see p. 18

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aconitum / Camphora comp.	Composition of Aconitum napellus e tubere D9 oleos and Quartz D9 oleos, with D-Camphora, Lavandulae aetheroleum and refined arachis oil. 10 g contain: Aconitum napellus e tubere ferm 33c Dil D9 oleos 1.0 g, D-Camphora 0.1 g, Lavandulae aetheroleum 0.1 g, Quartz Dil D9 oleos 0.1 g; other component: refined arachis oil From an anthroposophic pharmaceutical perspective, the formulation is intended to support warmth across all four constitutive levels of the human being. This intention is further reflected in the choice of excipients, particularly arachis oil, as well as in the selected dosage form, which is designed as a specific application engaging the patient's will.	Kommission C		Aconitum napellus e tubere ferm 33c Dil D9 (app. 2.2) is prepared according to HAB method 33c to D7, then potentised with ethanol, anhydrous to D9. Quartz D9 (app. 2.1, Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.2.1) is prepared from Quartz Trituration D6 by further potentisation according to Ph. Eur. Hom. 3.2.1, using purified water for D7, 30% ethanol for D8, and ethanol, anhydrous, for D9. For the preparation of Aconitum / Camphora comp., Aconitum napellus e tubere D9 and Quartz D9 are co-mixed with refined arachis oil over two steps. D-Camphora is crushed and the preparation of Aconitum / Camphora comp. is added, followed by Lavandulae aetheroleum and refined arachis oil; the mixture is then stirred to homogeneity.	Aconitum/Camphora comp.	
Alkali comp.	Mineral composition prepared according to the model of Cichorium intybus planta tota, from Potassium carbonate, Trona, Quartz and Myrrh.			Potassium carbonate, Trona and quartz are intensively triturated and mixed with an organic binder (Myrrh). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Alkali comp.
Anis-Pyrit	1 g Anis-Pyrit is prepared from: Pimpinella anisum, Fructus 0.33 g, pyrite 0.33 g and saccharum 0.33 g.			Warmed pyrite powder and melted sucrose (cane sugar) are thoroughly mixed. Powdered aniseed is added and mixed thoroughly. The resulting formulation is diluted with an equal amount of lactose monohydrate, grinded, and sieved. This intermediate preparation is designated Anis-Pyrit 50%. Anis-Pyrit D1 is prepared from 2 parts Anis-Pyrit 50% and 8 parts lactose monohydrate. D2 is prepared according to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.	Anis-Pyrit	
Apis cum Levistico	1 g Apis cum Levistico = D1 is prepared from 0.1 g Apis mellifica and 0.1 g aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug-to-extract ratio 4:1).			The bees are killed, comminuted and mixed with a freshly prepared aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug-to-extract ratio 4:1) and glycerol 85%. The liquid is processed immediately. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2 (and then HAB 11).	Apis cum Levistico	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Argentum-Corpus vitreum	Composition from fresh eye ball (Corpus vitreum from calf or rabbit) prepared with silver nitrate.			Fresh eyeball is cleaned and mixed with a solution prepared from silver nitrate, concentrated ammonia solution, and purified water. After addition of a solution of glucose monohydrate in purified water, the mixture is gently warmed to reduce the silver nitrate to metallic silver. After filtration, the residue is dried with lactose monohydrate, being adjusted to a final silver content of 1%. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1 to D4, then acc. to method 3.2.2.	Argentum-Corpus vitreum	
Arnica-Cerebrum	1 g Arnica-Cerebrum D1 contains: Arnica montana, planta tota, pressed juice 0.05 g and Cerebrum 0.05 g (Cerebrum = cerebrum, cerebellum, and brain stem in the ratio 2+1+1).			The cleaned ingredients of Cerebrum are mixed with the fresh pressed juice of Arnica montana and intensively triturated. Water for injections is added and the mixture is potentised to D1. The D1 potency is processed immediately according to Ph. Eur. Hom. 3.1.2.	Arnica-Cerebrum	
Calcium Quercus	see Quercus e cortice cum Calcio carbonico			see Quercus e cortice cum Calcio carbonico		
Calcium silicicum comp.	Mineral composition prepared according to the model of Arnica montana, Radix. Calcium silicicum comp., consisting of silicate melt (obtained from quartz, potassium carbonate, and calcium oxide), Arnica latex, dried aqueous extract of Quercus, Cortex, Camphor, essential oil of Arnica montana, Radix, and fresh wheat gluten.			The silicate melt is added to a mixture of arnica latex and dried aqueous extract of Quercus, Cortex, and triturated. Camphor and subsequently the essential oil of Arnica montana, Radix are added. The mixture is triturated thoroughly. Fresh wheat gluten is then added and kneaded to form a paste. This is dried, powdered, and diluted with lactose monohydrate. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.		Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.
Carbo Betulae cum Methano	Composition from charcoal from the birch, Betula pendula Roth, B. pubescens Ehrh. saturated with methane R1 (Ph.Eur.)			Powdered Carbo Betulae is heated under vacuum. After heating, and during cooling, it is saturated with methane. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Carbo Betulae cum Methano	
Chelidonium/ Curcuma praep.	Composition from Chelidonium majus, Rhizoma mother tincture (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5) and Curcuma xanthorrhiza, Rhizoma mother tincture (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12), prepared with ethanol 70% V/V.			Prepared by adding 1 part of Chelidonium majus, Rhizoma mother tincture (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.5) dropwise to 1 part of Curcuma xanthorrhiza, Rhizoma mother tincture (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12) under rotation.		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cinis Capsellae comp. APC	Composition prepared from the incinerated dried plant material of Artemisia absinthium L., Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Med., and Plantago lanceolata L., together with water-soluble ash salts, potassium carbonate, halite, copper sulfate, ferrous sulfate, wine vinegar prepared with fresh rose petals, and cerussa (Plumbi carbonas).			The dried plant material (Artemisia absinthium L, Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Med., Plantago lanceolata L.) is incinerated. The water soluble ash salts obtained therefrom, potassium carbonate (obtained from cream of tartar, Tartarus crudus) and halite are mixed and added to the powder-mixture of copper sulfate (Cupri sulfas pentahydricus) and ferrous sulfate (Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus). This combined powder is ground until the colour changes to reddish brown. In the next step wine vinegar (Acetum Vini), in which fresh rose petals (Rosa centifolia L.) have been soaked, is added and the mixture is heated and mixed while the colour turns to pistachio green. When the pasty mass gets more solid, cerussa (Plumbi carbonas) is added and heating is continued until the mixture is solid and dry. After cooling the substance obtained is powdered. For external use (e.g. ointment, gel) an aqueous solution of the water soluble salts is used as active substance: 9 parts of purified water are added to 1 part of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC, the mixture is agitated in a closed container and allowed to stand at room temperature for at least 20 hours. The supernatant is filtered. The resulting Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% is clear and viridian green (turquoise blue to emerald green) in colour and has to be processed immediately. 1 part Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% corresponds to 0.1 parts of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC.		Vademecum: Cinis Capsellae comp.
Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1)	Composition of equal parts of oat ash (Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae) and Magnesium phosphoricum.			Oats are moistened with water to initiate germination, then dried and incinerated. Equal parts of ash of oats and Magnesium phosphoricum are mixed. Potentisation according to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.	Arnica/Cactus comp.; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	Anthroposophische Pharmazie. p. 587-590

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cissus-Ossa	1 g of Cissus-Ossa is prepared from ethanolic extract of 1.5 g Cissus gongylodes aerial root and 0.5 g Ossa.			The bones of partridge or pheasant are cleaned, boiled, dried, powdered and mixed with equal parts of lactose monohydrate. To this mixture, the mother tincture of Cissus gongylodes prepared from dried aerial roots (Ph. Eur. Hom. Method 1.1.7) is added. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.	Cissus-Ossa	Vademecum
Compositio Cichorii	see Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha			see Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha		
Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha APC	Mineral composition according to the model of Cichorium intybus, planta tota, Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha APC, prepared from quartz, potassium carbonate, myrrh (Commiphora species), phosphoric acid, halite, caramelised fructose, and lactose monohydrate.			Potassium carbonate and quartz are melted together. After cooling, the product is dissolved in water and added to powdered myrrh (Commiphora species), previously swollen with Spiritus e vino and water. Phosphoric acid is then added, leading to precipitation of silicic acid. The mixture is dried, sieved, and mixed with halite. A concentrated aqueous solution of caramelised fructose and then lactose monohydrate are added. After drying, the whole mixture is ground to a uniform powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.		Vademecum
Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo APC	Mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L.), radix, Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo, prepared from potassium carbonate, quartz, trona, and sucrose.			Potassium carbonate and quartz are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution and, simultaneously with a solution of sucrose, added to a solution of potassium carbonate and trona. This mixture is immediately potentised with ethanol 15% to D1. Further potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 3.1.1.		Der Merkurstab 2012; 65(1): 46-53
Corpus vitreum-Stannum	1 g of Corpus vitreum-Stannum D1 contains Corpus vitreum 0.08 g and Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g.			A solution of tin (II) chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate (natrii carbonas) in purified water. The resulting precipitate (stannum hydroxydatum) is added to fresh, minced corpus vitreum and thoroughly mixed. The mixture is diluted in the proportion 1:10 with water for injections to prepare the D1 potency. The D1 potency is immediately further processed acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1 and 3.1.2	Corpus vitreum-Stannum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	1 g of Cuprum-Ren (= D1) contains Glandula suprarenalis (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) 0.023 g, Ren (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) 0.060 g, and tetrammine copper(II) sulfate 0.017 g.			The fresh, cleaned animal ingredient is mixed with a small amount of water for injections and tetrammine copper (II) sulfate, and triturated together. Afterwards the rest of the water for injections is added to make the D1 potency, and the mixture is potentised. The D1 potency is further processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	
Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum	Composition prepared from Equisetum arvense, Herba and sulfur.			99 parts Equisetum arvense, Herba (dried, herbal drug, comminuted to a particle size < 4 mm) are mixed with 1 part sulfur (particle size < 0.063 mm) and then toasted according to APC 4.1. Heating time: about 5 - 15 minutes. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum	
Equisetum hyemale-Rubellit	Composition from Equisetum hyemale L. with an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6.			Freshly harvested shoots of Equisetum hyemale L. are placed in an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and in the presence of daylight. In the evening, the shoots are removed, comminuted, and expressed. The expressed juice is mixed with an equal mass of ethanol 96%. After 5 to 10 days, the mixture is filtered. The filtrate is Equisetum hyemale-Rubellit Ø. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 1.1.1.		Der Merkurstab 2013; 66(5): 415-438.
Equisetum limosum-Rubellit	Composition from Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) with an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6.			Freshly harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) are placed in an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and in the presence of daylight. In the evening, the shoots are removed, comminuted, and expressed. The expressed juice is mixed with an equal mass of ethanol 96%. After 5 to 10 days, the mixture is filtered. The filtrate is Equisetum limosum-Rubellit Ø. Potentisation according to Ph. Eur. Hom. 1.1.1.		Soldner G, Stellmann HM. Individuelle Pädiatrie, 4. Auflage, Wissenschaftl. Verl. Ges., Stuttgart, 2011, p. 743
Ferrum hydroxydatum	Composition from Ferrum metallicum reductum (Ferrum aph) and red wine vinegar (Acetum Vini).			Iron previously obtained from siderite by reduction is covered with red wine vinegar and lightly warmed for about 14 days. Then the solution is filtered, and the residue washed with water and left to react with air. This oxidation releases heat, therefore, the preparation has to be kept moist. The oxidised iron is reduced to powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Ferrum hydroxydatum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Ferrum pomatum	Composition from sour apple juice and Ferrum aph. 1 g of the D1 contains: 5 mg Fe.			Sour apples are pressed. 100 parts juice is mixed with 4 parts Ferrum aph. The mixture is left for several days and then warmed to about 50 °C. Afterwards the solution is filtered, evaporated to 55-65% of the weighed mass and mixed with ethanol 96% (standardisation on 10% ethanol and 0.5% Fe). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1 using ethanol 18%.		
Ferrum rosatum	Composition from Rosa centifolia and Ferrum sidereum D1.			Fresh rose petals are triturated with 1% Ferrum sidereum D1 and the amount of water, calculated according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6, then allowed to stand for 2-4 days at 15-20 °C. The calculated amount of ethanol 96% is added and the preparation continued according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6. The composition may be further potentised acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.6.	Ferrum rosatum/ Graphites; Tropaeolum comp.	
Ferrum-Quarz	Composition from ferrous sulfate, honey and calcinated quartz.			The composition is prepared by mixing ferrosi sulfas heptahydricus, honey (mel), white wine, and calcinated quartz. This mixture is heated and dried under vacuum. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1 or 4.1.2	Ferrum/Quarz	
Helleborus foetidus	Composition prepared from leaves and roots of Helleborus foetidus L.			Mother tinctures are prepared acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. Method 1.3.1 from leaves and roots of Helleborus foetidus L., collected in summer, and flowering shoots collected in winter (see app. 2.2). After sterile filtration, the two mother tinctures are mixed 1:1 according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 5.1.2, and the mixture potentised according to Ph.Eur.Hom. Method 1.3.1 (D1 from 3 parts of mixture and 7 parts of water for injections).		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 565
Helleborus niger	Composition prepared from the fresh plant parts of Helleborus niger L. (Flos rec. and Planta tota rec., see app. 2.2)			Mother tinctures are prepared acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. Method 1.3.1 from the whole fresh plant of Helleborus niger L. collected in summer and flowering shoots collected in winter (see app. 2.2). After sterile filtration, the two mother tinctures are mixed 1:1 according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 5.1.2 and the mixture potentised according to Ph.Eur.Hom. Method 1.3.1 (D1 from 3 parts of mixture and 7 parts of water for injections).		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 565-566
Hepar sulfuris calcareum	see Hepar sulfuris (app. 2.4)			see Hepar sulfuris (app. 2.4)		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hepar-Magnesium	1 g of Hepar-Magnesium D1 contains Hepar 0.06 g and Magnesium hydroxydatum 0.04 g.			A solution of magnesium chloride (Magnesii chloridum hexahydricus) in water is mixed with a solution of sodium hydroxide in water. The resulting precipitate (Magnesium hydroxydatum) is washed several times with water, then mixed with chopped pieces of liver, and then finally triturated with honey (mel). The mixture is diluted with water for injections (Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2.	Hepar-Magnesium	
Hepar-Stannum	1 g of Hepar-Stannum contains Hepar 0.08 g and Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g.			A solution of tin (II) chloride (Stannosi chloridum dihydricum) in water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate in water. The resulting precipitate (Stannum hydroxydatum) is washed with water. The washed Stannum hydroxydatum is mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then thoroughly triturated with honey (mel). The mixture is combined with water for injections (Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph.Eur.Hom. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Hepar-Stannum	
Kalium aceticum comp.	Composition prepared from potassium carbonate, distilled red wine vinegar (Acetum vini destillatum), antimonite (stibnite), Crocus sativus tincture 1:20 (vehicle: Spiritus e vino), Spiritus e vino, and Corallium rubrum.			Potassium carbonate, distilled red wine vinegar, antimonite, Crocus sativus tincture, Corallium rubrum, and Spiritus e vino are combined stepwise and repeatedly distilled. The resulting dried residue is used. Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 4.1.1.	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Kalium sulfuricum comp.	Mineral composition according to the model of Anagallis arvensis, herba, Kalium sulfuricum comp., prepared from Kalii sulfas anhydricus and Natrii sulfas anhydricus, using mucilage of Lini semen Ph. Eur. and lactose monohydrate Ph.Eur.			The mineral composition is prepared by mixing Kalii sulfas anhydricus and Natrii sulfas anhydricus and making a paste by grinding with mucilage of Lini semen Ph.Eur. (Linum usitatissimum L.). The mixture is dried, grinded, sieved, and finally diluted with lactose monohydrate. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Kalium sulfuricum comp.
Lapis Cancri-Flintstein	1 g Lapis Cancri-Flintstein contains: Lapis Cancri 0.5 g and flint 0.5 g.			Finely powdered Lapis Cancri and flint are thoroughly mixed with Spiritus e Vino and the slurry is treated with water. The resultant dry residue is the substance. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mixtura Stanni comp.	Mixtura Stanni comp. suspension is prepared from Alumen, Cuprum metallicum, Stannum metallicum, and Acidum nitricum (65%).			1 g suspension is prepared from: 1 mg Alumen, 0.002 mg Cuprum metallicum, 2 mg Stannum metallicum and 10.4 mg Acidum nitricum (65 per centum).	Mixtura Stanni comp.	Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 332-337
Myrrha comp.	1 g of Myrrha comp. D1 is prepared from Myrrha 0.1 g, Aurum metallicum foliatum (gold leaf) 0.001 g, and Olibanum 0.1 g.			Myrrha and gold leaf are bound together with the aid of moderate heat; incense smoke (from Olibanum) is passed through the mixture. This composition is stirred into molten sucrose (cane sugar). After cooling it is triturated for one hour by hand, resulting the potency D1. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Myrrha comp.
Onopordon comp.	Composition of Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1–1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø and Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1–1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø.			See Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (app. 2.6) and Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (app. 2.6). 1 g of each tincture is mixed with ethanol of suitable concentration to get 10 g preparation.	Onopordon comp.	
Onopordon comp. praeparatum CH	Composition from diluted mixtures of Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) prepared with 2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø and Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1).			0.1 part of Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) prepared with 2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø is diluted with 0.315 parts of purified water ("mixture a"). 0.1 part of Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) is diluted with 0.315 parts of purified water (mixture b). In a special equipment "mixture b" is dropped into the rotating "mixture a". 0.17 parts of ethanol 96% are added to obtain 1 part of the final product	Onopordon comp.	
Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Composition prepared by digestio from fresh flower heads of Onopordum acanthium L. with the addition of 0.1–1% Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba rec. mother tincture.			Digestio prepared according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh flowerheads of Onopordum acanthium L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections with the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Peat moss extract composition I (light)	Composition of Solum uliginosum, Aesculus hippocastanum L. and Equisetum arvense L.			98 parts of peat moss (Solum uliginosum) extract prepared in analogy to to HAB Method 12c (using purified water only), are mixed with each 1 part of Aesculus hippocastanum e semine according to HAB Method 12m and Equisetum arvense ex herba according to HAB Method 12c. The supernatant liquid is decanted and filtered after 10 - 12 weeks yielding at least 75% Peat moss extract composition I. API or potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.2	Solum uliginosum comp.	
Peat moss extract composition II (dark)	The composition is the residue obtained from the preparation of Peat moss extract composition I.			The residue remaining after decantation during the preparation of Peat Moss Extract Composition I (up to 25%) is referred to as Peat Moss Extract Composition II.	Solum uliginosum comp.	
Plantago comp.	Composition of Plantago lanceolata, Drosera, Petasites hybridus, D-Camphora, yellow beeswax, eucalyptus oil, thyme oil typo thymolo, larch resin, refined arachis oil and wool fat. 10 g contain: D-Camphora 0.2g, yellow beeswax 1.5g, Drosera e planta tota ferm 33c Dil D_3 0.1g, Eucalypti aetheroleum 0.05g, Petasites hybridus e radice ferm 33c Dil D_1 0.1g, Plantago lanceolata e foliis ferm 34c Dil D_1 0.1g, Terebinthina laricina 0.5g, Thymi typo thymolo aetheroleum 0.05g, other components: refined arachis oil; ethanol 96%; purified water; wool fat. From an anthroposophic pharmaceutical perspective, the formulation is representative of two natural kingdoms (plant and animal world). The excipients used support the intention of the active substances.	Kommission C		Drosera e planta tota ferm 33c is potentised with purifed water according to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2 to D2. Drosera e planta tota ferm 33c Dil D2 is co-potentised with Petasites hybridus e radice ferm 33c and Plantago lanceolata e foliis ferm 34c according to Ph.Eur.5.1.2 to Drosera e planta tota ferm 33c Dil D3, Petasites hybridus e radice ferm 33c Dil D1 and Plantago lanceolata e foliis ferm 34c Dil D1. This co-potency is mixed with purified water. This mixture is called "preparation for Plantago comp.". Manufacturing of Plantago comp.: yellow beeswax, wool fat and refined arachis oil are melted, stirred and cooled. D-Camphora 20% in arachis oil is added and the mixture is homogenised. Thymi typo thymolo aetheroleum, Eucalypti aetheroleum, ethanol 96% and Terebinthina laricina are mixed and added. Then the mixture is homogenised. Finally, the preparation for Plantago comp. and purified water are added and the mixture is homogenised again and cooled.	Plantago comp.	
Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Composition prepared from an aqueous or ethanolic digestio from fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata and 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba mother tincture.			Digestio prepared according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.04 to 0.08 parts (corresponding to 1 to 2%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Plumbum aceticum/Mel comp.	Composition prepared from lead(II) acetate trihydrate (Plumbum aceticum), honey (mel) and cane sugar (saccharum).			Lead(II) acetate trihydrate is melted and poured out as a layer. Depressions are introduced into the layer of lead(II) acetate trihydrate, filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten lead(II) acetate trihydrate. After cooling it is ground, melted and then poured in a layer again. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten lead(II) acetate trihydrate from the first lead(II) acetate-honey-layer. After cooling it is ground and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process, the powder must be sieved. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1.		Vademecum
Plumbum mellitum	Composition prepared from lead (Plumbum metallicum), honey (mel) and cane sugar (saccharum).			Depressions are introduced into a sheet of lead, these are filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten lead. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled this time with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten lead from the first lead-honey-sheet. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Arnica/Betula comp.; Arnica/Epiphysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp.; Arnica/ Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Arnica/ Plumbum mellitum; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Plumbum mellitum	
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:12.35) with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Composition prepared by digestion from fresh flowers of Primula veris L. with the addition of 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba rec. mother tincture.			Prepared by digestion according to APC 3.8.1 from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 12.35 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration and the addition of 0.08 parts (corresponding to 0.6%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).		
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Composition prepared by digestion from fresh flowers of Primula veris L. with the addition of 0.1–1% Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba rec. mother tincture.			Prepared by digestio according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Prunuseisen	Prunus spinosa e floribus et summitatibus ferm cum Ferro			Prepared according to HAB method 37a	Levico comp.; Prunus spinosa cum Ferro	
Quercus e cortice cum Calcio carbonico	Composition of incinerated oak bark decoction prepared by induction with carbon dioxide.			1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus (Q. robur L., Q petraea (Matt.) Liebl., Q. pubencens Willd.): oak bark is incinerated. The ash is suspended 1 part in 10 parts of purified water. Carbon dioxide is induced for 5 to 10 minutes and the suspension warmed until bubbling starts (75-85 °C). This temperature is kept until bubbling ends. The cooled suspension is filtered and the residue dried = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus. 2. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum: 0.1 part of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus is mixed with 6100 parts of purified water or water for Injections and boiled for 5 minutes. The cooled solution is filtered (for solutions for injection it is decanted and filtered). The result is a saturated aqueous solution of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum. 2.1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum: syrup prepared with sucrose and Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (64:36). 3. Quercus robur/petraea e cortice cum Calcio carbonico solution = D5: A decoction of oak bark according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.4.3 (Ø=D1) is potentised to D5 with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum as a vehicle. Appendix: according to the dosage form to be produced either potentise further with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (e.g. solution for injection) or with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum (Globuli velati).	Calcium carbonicum cum Quercu ; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Rosae aetheroleum / Silicea colloidalis comp.	Composition of Geranii aetheroleum, Rosae aetheroleum and Silicea colloidalis in a semisolid base of liquid paraffin, white soft paraffin and wool fat. 10 g contain: Geranii aetheroleum 0.025 g, Rosae aetheroleum 0.005 g, and Silicea colloidalis (APC) 0.1 g. other components: liquid paraffin, white soft paraffin and wool fat. The whole composition with its excipients is a representative of the three natural kingdoms (mineral, plant, and animal kingdom). Therefore, the substance of the animal kingdom (wool fat) needs to be part of the composition. With the choice of the dosage form the nerve sense-system is addressed.	Kommission C		Wool fat, white soft paraffin, and liquid paraffin are melted, stirred and cooled. A mixture of citric acid and purified water is added and stirred. Then a mixture of sodium silicate and purified water is added and the mixture is homogenised and cooled. Geranii aetheroleum and Rosae aetheroleum are added and the bulk is homogenised again.	Rosae aetheroleum/ Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Roseneisen	Rosa e floribus ferm cum Ferro			Prepared according HAB method 37a	Ferrum rosatum/ Graphites	
Rubellit comp.	Composition from freshly harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) treated with an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 and processed with honey and ethanol.			Freshly harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) are placed into an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and in the presence of day light. In the evening the shoots are removed, comminuted and expressed. 4 parts of expressed juice are mixed with 1 part of honey (mel). After standing at 37°C for 12 h during the night, 5 parts of ethanol 96% are added. After 5 to 10 days, the mixture is filtered. The filtrate is Rubellit comp. Ø. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2013; 66(5): 415-436, 439-442.
Silex-Lapis cancri solutus	Composition from calcium silicate obtained by precipitatation from potassium silicate and calcium acetate and dissolved in distilled red wine vinegar.			Calcium silicate is precipitated by adding an aqueous solution of potassium silicate (prepared from flint and potassium nitrate (Kalii nitras)) to an aqueous solution of calcium acetate (prepared from Lapis Cancri and distilled red wine vinegar (Acetum Vini destillatum) in several steps) and dissolved in distilled red wine vinegar to give a clear solution. The solution is diluted with water to 1.0% and then successed to result the potency D2. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1		Vademecum: Silex-Lapis Cancri solutus
Solum uliginosum / Aesculus hippocastanum L. / Equisetum arvense L.	see Peat moss extract composition			see Peat moss extract composition		

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Solutio alkalina	Composition from ash of green plants and crude cream of tartar (Tartarus crudus).			An aqueous solution with 10% dry residue is prepared from ash of green plants and crude cream of tartar (Tartarus crudus). Potentisation acc. to Ph. Eur. Hom. 3.1.1 using ethanol 18%.	Solutio alkalina	Vademecum
Solutio Ferri comp.	Mineral composition according to the model of Urtica dioica, planta tota, Solutio Ferri comp., prepared from potassium carbonate, ferric potassium tartrate, sulfur, trona, and tartaric acid.			Potassium carbonate, trona and sulfur are melted together. The resulting melt is dissolved in water and alternately heated and subjected to an intensive air-stream. After this procedure ferric potassium tartrate (Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum) and acidum tartaricum are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1	Aqua Maris comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/ Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.	Vademecum
Solutio Sacchari comp.	Mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L.), radix, prepared from Carbo Betulae, potassium carbonate, ferric potassium tartrate, honey, quartz, trona, and sulfuric acid.			Potassium carbonate, quartz and Carbo Betulae are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, to which a solution of potassium carbonate, trona and sulfuric acid (Acidum sulfuricum) is added. After addition previously diluted sulfuric acid, honey and then ferric potassium tartrate (Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum) are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1	Cinis Arnicae comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.	Vademecum
Solutio Siliceae comp.	Mineral composition according to the model of Equisetum arvense, herba, Solutio Siliceae comp., prepared from potassium carbonate, marble, quartz, trona, and sulfur.			Quartz and potassium carbonate are melted together and dissolved in water. In a further step marble, potassium carbonate and trona are dissolved in water by adding vapour from burning sulfur to a second solution. Both solutions are combined under continuos vapour from burning sulfur. Air is passed through the resulting solution for several hours. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 3.1.1	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	Vademecum
Stannum mellitum	Composition prepared from tin (Stannum metallicum) with honey (Mel) and cane sugar (Saccharum).			Depressions are introduced into a sheet of tin, these are filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten tin. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten tin. After cooling the material is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		Der Merkurstab 1992; 45(2): 108-12

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Trabeculum comp.	1 g of Trabeculum comp. (= D1) is prepared from Trabeculum 0.1 g, Acidum formicicum e formica (5%) 0.1 g, Cupri sulfas 0.005 g, Ammoniae solutio concentrata 0.007 g, Hydrargyrum biiodatum 0.03 g, and Kalii iodidum 0.0225 g.			Trabeculum is treated with an aqueous solution of acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with an ammoniacal solution of copper sulfate. A solution of mercury (II) iodide and potassium iodide is then added, followed by lactose monohydrate. After drying, the whole mixture is rubbed to a uniform powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Trabeculum comp.	
Uvea comp.	1 g of Uvea comp. is prepared from: Uvea bovis 1.00 g, Acidum formicicum e formica 1.00 g, Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 0.10 g, Acidum ascorbicum 0.10 g, Ferrum sulfuricum (Ferrosi sulfas) 0.33 g, Solutio natrii silicici 1.00 g, and Hyoscyamus niger, Planta tota Rh Ø (Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.5.1) 1.00 g.			Uvea is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with a solution of magnesium phosphate dihydrate and sodium silicate. An aqueous solution of ferrous sulfate and ascorbic acid is then added, followed by Hyoscyamus, Planta tota Rh Ø. After drying, the substance is powdered. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		
Viscum Abietis		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extracts prepared from fresh plants excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch. (host tree: Abies alba Mill.; fir tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Abietis		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5, prepared from fresh one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (host tree: fir), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Abietis		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (host tree: fir), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Aceris		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: maple), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Abietis) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from the dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (host tree: Abies alba Mill.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum album (Crataegi) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extracts prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Crataegus L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Mali) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from the dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: Malus domestica Borck.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Pini) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (host tree: Pinus species) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Populi) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L ssp. album (host tree: Populus L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Quercus) ex herba K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plant including fruit and excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: Quercus L.) prepared according to HAB method 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Salicis) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extracts of dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (host tree: Salix L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Tiliae) e planta tota K		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract of dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (host tree: Tilia L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum Amygdali	Composition from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: almond).	APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: almond), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Betulae		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: birch), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum Crataegi		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: hawthorn), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Fraxini		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: ash) , harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5, prepared from fresh one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: apple tree), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plants excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; apple tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: apple), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali cum Argento		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5, prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: apple tree), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of silver carbonate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg	
Viscum Mali cum Cupro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5, prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: apple tree), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of copper carbonate (malachite) (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5, prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: apple tree), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of mercury sulfate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Pini		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Pini		APC	Viscum album	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plants excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Pini		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Pini cum Hydrargyro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (host tree: pine), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of mercury sulfate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Quercus		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: oak), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Quercus		APC	Viscum album	Buffered aqueous extract 1:50 of extracts/mother tinctures prepared from fresh one-year shoots incl. fruits of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: oak), harvested in summer and winter, prepared according to HAB 32 or APC 7.2.	Viscum album	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Viscum Quercus cum Argento		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: oak), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of silver carbonate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg	
Viscum Quercus cum Cupro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: oak), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of copper carbonate (malachite) (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu	
Viscum Quercus cum Hydrargyro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: oak), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of mercury sulfate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Ulmi cum Hydrargyro		APC	Viscum album	Fermented aqueous extract 1:5 is prepared from fresh, one and two year old shoots of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: elm), harvested in summer and winter, prepared with addition of a D4 trituration of mercury sulfate (0.1 mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	

APPENDIX 2.7

Stocks with special manufacturing methods

Explanations

Reference to Standard: (HAB): the plant (not the preparation method) is described in the HAB
If no reference is given company monograph exists.

Preparation method: Methods for preparation of the substance and for processing the substance and for other uses
The ethanol content is always given as %(V/V) unless stated otherwise.

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aesculus hippocastanum Cortex sicc., ethanol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	With ethanol stabilized aqueous decoction of the dried bark of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Ph.Eur.	Hippocastani cortex	1 part of dried bark of Aesculus hippocastanum L. is boiled with 6 parts of purified water. Then express. The fluid is condensed to 1.36 parts by evaporation at max. 70°C and after cooling supplemented by 0.64 parts of ethanol (96 per cent) to get 2 parts of the mother tincture, giving an ethanol concentration of 36 per cent (V/V). Then filter.		Ph. Helv. Vorschrift 17.7.8.4 (Präparateverzeichnis CH, seit 1999: Hamamelis / Quercus comp. Crème)
Arnica montana, Planta tota rec. 1:1.1	Ethanolic extract of whole plants of Arnica montana L.	HAB	Arnica montana ex planta tota	Whole, fresh flowering plants of Arnica montana L. are comminuted and macerated for 10-30 days with 1.1 parts of ethanol, giving an ethanol concentration of 36 % V/V, then pressed and filtered.	Arnica, Planta tota	
Bryophyllum pinnata 1:1.1	Aqueous extract of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	HAB	Bryophyllum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum are macerated under occasional stirring with 1.1 parts of water for 1.5-2.5 h, pressed and the fluid later filtered.	Bryophyllum	
Carbo Betulae	Carbon obtained from wood of Betula pendula Roth or B. pubescens Ehrh.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Carbo vegetabilis HAB; Carbo vegetabilis PPH Ph.fr.	Carbon prepared from wood of Betula pendula or B. pubescens according to APC 4.2 (cf. Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.2). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Carbo Betulae; Carbo Betulae cum Methano ; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Carbo Betulae/Crataegus ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur	
Carbo Coffeae	Product with min. 1.0% caffeine, obtained by intensive roasting of ripe, dried seeds of Coffea arabica L.	(HAB)	Coffea arabica	Intensive roasting of ripe, dried seeds of Coffea arabica HAB. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1		
Carbo Pteridii aquilini	Carbon obtained from leaves of Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn			Leaves of Pteridium aquilinum are dried and the carbon is prepared according to APC 4.2. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Carex arenaria, ethanol. Decoctum 1:4	Ethanolic decoction of the dried rhizome of Carex arenaria L.			The comminuted dried rhizome is mixed with 3.14 parts of water and 0.86 parts of ethanol 96 %. After 12-18 h, the mixture is heated for 30 min under reflux to get an ethanolic decoction 1:4 (DER) (cf. Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.2.12). The mixture is pressed and later filtered.		
Cinis Glechomatis	Ash from dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.			Ash obtained from dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea acc. to APC 4.3. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1	Cinis Glechomatis	Vademecum
Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae	Ash obtained from dried, aerial parts of Urtica dioica Ferro culta			Urtica dioica Ferro culta (app. 2.5) is dried and the ash prepared according to Ph.Eur.Hom. 17.7.4.3 (cf. APC 4.3). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 4.1.1.	Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Vademecum
Citrus limon, Fruct. rec., 1:0.41	Ethanolic extract of fresh fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.			Fresh fruit of Citrus limon is extracted with ethanol 36 % (DER = 1:0.41)		
Equisetum arvense, Fermentatio cum Sero Lactis 1:4.1	Extract of fresh, green sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L. with whey	(HAB)	Equisetum arvense Rh	1 part of fresh, green sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense is extracted with 4.1 parts of fresh whey from milk of the cow (DER 1:4.1). The filtered extract is the mother tincture, 5 parts of which are potentised to D1 with 5 parts of boiled and filtered whey and then to D3 with boiled and filtered whey. The bulk preparation is filtrated through 0.2 µm and then immediately filled.		Vademecum
Hypericum perforatum; Flos; Extr. oleos 1:2	Oil extract of fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum			Fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum are extracted with 2 parts of refined sesame oil.	Hypericum	
Lac Taraxaci	Fresh latex of Taraxacum officinale (fresh underground parts) collected in spring (vernale)			Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.2		Der Merkurstab 2010(63) (1): 4-21

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Laurocerasus 100%	Aqueous distillate of the fresh leaves of Prunus laurocerasus L. with 0.09-0.11 % HCN	HAB; Ph. Helv.	Eingestelltes Kirschloorbeerwasser - Laurocerasi aqua normata	See monograph; adjustment of the distillate to 0.1% HCN by adding ethanol 4.8 %	Spiritus contra tussim	
Lysimachia nummularia Herba rec., glycerol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	With glycerol stabilized aqueous decoction of the fresh aerial parts of Lysimachia nummularia L.			1 part of fresh aerial parts of Lysimachia nummularia L. is boiled with 2 parts of purified water for 30 minutes. Then express. The fluid is condensed to 0.7 parts by evaporation, then filtered and after cooling supplemented by 1.3 parts of glycerol 85% to get 2 parts of the mother tincture, giving a glycerol concentration of 55 % (m/m).	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	Ph. Helv. Vorschrift 17.7.8.4 (Präparateverzeichnis Weleda, Schwäbisch Gmünd DE, 7. Auflage, Nov. 1954: Dermatodoron Salbe)
Mucilago Levistici D1	Aqueous extract of the dried root of Levisticum officinale Koch	Ph.Eur.		The dried root is comminuted (2000) and 1 part is macerated for 12-18 h with 8.4 parts of water and then pressed and filtered. To one part of the fluid 0.1905 parts of ethanol 96 % are added to get Mucilago Levistici D1 with 18 % ethanol. Later, the extract is filtered.	Levisticum	
Quercus Cortex sicc, ethanol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	With ethanol stabilized aqueous decoction of the dried bark of Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Quercus, ethanol. Decoctum (HAB) Quercus cortex (Ph.Eur.)	1 part of dried bark of Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl. is boiled with 4 parts of purified water for 30 minutes. Then express. The fluid is condensed to 1.58 parts by evaporation at max. 70 °C and after cooling supplemented by 0.42 parts of ethanol (96 per cent) to get 2 parts of the mother tincture, giving an ethanol concentration of 25 per cent (V/V). Then filter.		Ph. Helv. Vorschrift 17.7.8.4 (Präparateverzeichnis CH, seit 1999: Hamamelis / Quercus comp. Crème)
Salvia officinalis, Folium sicc., Infusum, glycerol 1:5.	Glycerolic extract of dried leaves of Salvia officinalis L.			1 part of cut, dried leaves of Salvia officinalis is extracted with 5 parts of heated (95-100° C) glycerol (85 per cent) and heated for 10 min under reflux, then cooled. After 12-36 h, the mixture is pressed and strained.	Salvia comp.	

Name of the substance	Definition	Reference to Standard	Name of the monograph	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Sepia Gruneris	Dried secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.	HAB	Sepia officinalis	Acc. to Gruner: 1 part of the dried secretion is extracted under stirring with 5.24 parts of water for at least 5 h, then mixed with 4.76 parts of ethanol 96 %, potentised and filtered. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur.Hom. 1.1.9, 2.2.3	Sepia comp.	Vademecum: Sepia
Solanum dulcamara Flos rec., glycerol. stab. Decoctum 1:2	With glycerol stabilized aqueous decoction of the fresh flowers of Solanum dulcamara L.			1 part of fresh flowers of Solanum dulcamara L. is boiled with 2 parts of purified water for 30 minutes. Then express and filter. The fluid is supplemented by 1.3 parts of glycerol (85 per cent). The dilution mixture then is condensed to 2 parts by evaporation at maximum boiling point, giving a glycerol concentration of 55 % (m/m).	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	Ph. Helv. Vorschrift 17.7.8.4 (Präparateverzeichnis Weleda, Schwäbisch Gmünd DE, 7. Auflage, Nov. 1954: Dermatodoron Salbe)
Viscum album, Extractum resinosum	An extract of the lipophilic, resinous substances of the green parts of Viscum album L.			Fresh green parts (stems, leaves and green generative organs) of Viscum album are comminuted and extracted with supercritical CO2 at 700-900 bar.		Phytomedicine 2015; 22. Suppl. 1 S. S28. Anthroposophische Pharmazie Salumed Verlag Berlin 2016

Index list of terms of part I and II

A

Active substances 16_18
Agate water 17
Algae 16_17
Animal matter 36_37_38_39_48_49
Animal origin 18_37
Anis-Pyrit 52
Anthroposophic medicinal products 5_6_11_16_18_78
Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex 5_11_12
Anthroposophic pharmacy 7_11_16_24_33
Anthroposophic preparations 6_11
APC 12
Aqua maris 17
Argentum metallicum praeparatum 34
Ash process 24

B

Bark 17
Biennial 17_33
Biodoron 18
Biodynamic cultivation 17
Blood products 16_17
Botanical origin 16_17

C

Calcareous products 16_17
Capsules 78
Carbo 27_49
Carbo Gentianae 49
Carbonisation 24
Carbons 27_48_49
Cathode 63_64
Cinis 49_52
Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico 52
Cinis Tabaci 49
Cissus-Ossa 54
Cold maceration 24
Compositions 14_51_54
Composting process 33
Contaminants 17
Co-potentisation 55_56
Co-potentising 54_55
Council Directive (EEC) 17_18
Creams 78
Crystal 17
Cuprum mirror foil 34
Cutaneous application 57
Cydonia oblonga 45_60_61_62

D

DAB 12
DAC 12
Demeter 17_18
Digestion 24_26_28_41_42
Distillate 45_46
Distillation products 16_17
Dornach 5_16_18
Dosage forms 11_14_16_18_46_56_78_79_80

E

Ear drops 79
Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum 33
Essential oils 16_17
European Pharmacopoeia 6_7_12_16_18_78
Excipient 14_18
Extracts 16_17_27_39_45_49_50_51_52_53
Eye drops 56_79

F

Ferm 41_47_52_62
Fermentation 35_40_41_46_47_52
fermented tinctures 26
Ferrum-Quarz 52
Flowers 17
French Pharmacopoeia 12
Fungi 16_17

G

Gels 78_79_82
German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia 12
German Pharmacopoeia 12
GHP 12
Glycerol macerates 35_38
Granules 78
Growing season 33

H

Heat treatment 35_41_45_48_51_60_61
Hepar-Magnesium 52
Hepar sulfuris 52
Homoeopathic manufacturing method 5
HPUS 12

I

IAAP 12_16_25
Infusion 24_26_28_42_43
Infusum 26_42_43
Injections 80
Isotonic solution 18_35_53_56

J

Juices 16_17_27_49_50

K

Kalium aceticum comp. 52
KC Monograph 12
Kommission C 12

L

Lactobacillus plantarum suspension 53
Leaves and shoots 17
Levico 17_63
Lichens 16_17
Life cycle 33
Liquid dilutions 51_80
Liquid potencies 25
Liquid preparations 26_39_58_78
Liquid solutions 27_28_51

M

Maceration 24_26_28_35_36_37_38_39
Metabolic system 24
Metallicum praeparatum 34
Metal mirrors 34_35
Metal plant-compost 33
Metal preparations 26
Metal salts 34
Metal vapour 35
Minerals 16_17
Miner, Carl S. 37
Mixtures 27_58
Mother tinctures 12_13_17_18_26_35_36_37_40_41_42_43_44_47_52_53_54_55_58

N

Nasal drops 79
Nasal spray 79

O

Ointments 56_57_78_80
Oleoresins 16_17
Oral drops 78
Oral solution 78
Organs 16_17

P

Parenteral preparations 18_56
Percolate 39
Percolation 39_40
Perennial plants 17
Petioles 33
Pharmaceutical processes 24_35_51_52_54
Pharmacopoea Helvetica 12
Pharmacopoeia 14_33_34_35_36_38_39_40_41_42_43_44_45_46_47_48_49_50_51_52_54_56_58
Ph.Helv. 26_27_28_29
Pillules 78_79
Plant secretions 16_17
Plumbum mellitum 52
Potentised preparations 25
Powders 78
Preparations 24

Q

Quartz 34

R

Rh 13_47_48
Rhythmically diluted 56
Rhythmic application 27_35_46_47_60_62
Rhythmic processing 24
Rhythmic succussion 25
Rhythmic system 24
Rocks 16_17
Rotating disk 53

S

Semi-solid vaginal preparations 79
Silica 34_60_61_62
Silicium 34
Silicium dioxide 34
Solid preparations from plants 27_49
Solid starting materials obtained by heat 27_48
Solutions 79_80
Solutio Sacchari comp. 52
Sprays 79
Sputtering 34
Summer extract 53
Suppositories 80
Swiss Pharmacopoeia 12
Syrups 78

T

Tabacum Cupro cultum 33
Tablets 78
Thuja 33
Tincture 12_25_33_36_41_43_44_50_52_53_60_62_78
Toasted preparations 48
Toasting 24
Tosta 27_48

V

Vaginal tablets 79
Vapour decomposition 34_35
Vegetabilisation 18_34
Vegetabilised metals 33_34
Vegetation period 33

Viscous extracts 35_45
Viscum album 65

W

Waters, natural 16_17

Z

Zoological origin 16_17_18_35_36_37_38_48